Third Party Acknowledgments:

1. The Product incorporates IBM-ICU 2.6 (LIC-255) technology from IBM. Such technology is subject to the following terms and conditions: Copyright (c) 1995-2009 International Business Machines Corporation and others. All rights reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, provided that the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in all copies of the Software and that both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder. All trademarks and registered trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners.

2. The Product incorporates IDL Compiler Front End Technology from Sun Microsystems, Inc. Such technology is subject to the following terms and conditions: Copyright 1992, 1993, 1994 Sun Microsystems, Inc. Printed in the United States of America. All Rights Reserved. This product is protected by copyright and distributed under the following license restricting its use. The Interface Definition Language Compiler Front End (CFE) is made available for your use provided that you include this license and copyright notice on all media and documentation and the software program in which this product is incorporated in whole or part. You may copy and extend functionality (but may not remove functionality) of the Interface Definition Language CFE without charge, but you are not authorized to license or distribute it to anyone else except as part of a product or program developed by you or with the express written consent of Sun Microsystems, Inc. ("Sun"). The names of Sun Microsystems, Inc. and any of its subsidiaries or affiliates may not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of Interface Definition Language CFE as permitted herein. This license is effective until terminated by Sun for failure to comply with this license. Upon termination, you shall destroy or return all code and documentation for the Interface Definition Language CFE. The Interface Definition Language CFE may not be exported outside of the United States without first obtaining the appropriate government approvals.

INTERFACE DEFINITION LANGUAGE CFE IS PROVIDED AS IS WITH NO WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND INCLUDING THE WARRANTIES OF DESIGN, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT, OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE OR TRADE PRACTICE. INTERFACE DEFINITION LANGUAGE CFE IS PROVIDED WITH NO SUPPORT AND WITHOUT ANY OBLIGATION ON THE PART OF SUN OR ANY OF ITS SUBSIDIARIES OR AFFILIATES TO ASSIST IN ITS USE, CORRECTION, MODIFICATION OR ENHANCEMENT. SUN OR ANY OF ITS SUBSIDIARIES OR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS, TRADE SECRETS OR ANY PATENTS BY INTERFACE DEFINITION LANGUAGE CFE OR ANY PART THEREOF. IN NO EVENT WILL SUN OR ANY OF ITS SUBSIDIARIES OR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST REVENUE OR PROFITS OR OTHER SPECIAL, INDIRECT AND CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, EVEN IF SUN HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.
Contents

List of Figures 11
List of Tables 13
Preface 15

Part 1 Introduction

Chapter 1 Introduction to CORBA and Orbix 21
Overview of CORBA 22
Why CORBA? 23
CORBA Objects 25
The ORB 27
CORBA Application Basics 28
Overview of Orbix 31
Simple Orbix Application 32
Broader Orbix Environment 35

Chapter 2 Introduction to the CICS Adapters 37
Overview of the CICS Server Adapter 39
Role of the CICS Server Adapter 40
CICS Server Adapter Processing of IDL Operations 43
The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface 44
Unsupported IDL Types 52
Overview of the Client Adapter 53
Part 2  Configuring the CICS Server Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS

Chapter 3  Introduction to CICS Server Adapter Configuration  59
   A CICS Server Adapter Sample Configuration  60
   Configuration Summary of Adapter Plug-Ins  65

Chapter 4  CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details  77
   CICS Server Adapter Service Configuration  78

Chapter 5  Configuring the CICS Server Adapter EXCI Plug-In  89
   Setting Up EXCI for the CICS Server Adapter  90
      Installing Support for IRC for the External Call Interface  91
      Installing Sample Orbix CICS Resource Definitions  92
      Updating Access Permissions for CICS Resources  93
   EXCI Plug-In Configuration Items  94

Chapter 6  Configuring the CICS Server Adapter APPC Plug-In  97
   Setting Up APPC for the CICS Server Adapter  98
      Defining LUs to APPC  99
      Defining an APPC Destination Name for the CICS LU  100
      Defining LUs to VTAM  102
      Defining the Required Resources to CICS  104
   Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC  105
      Bind Time Security with APPC  106
      Protecting LUs  108
      Link Security & User Security with APPC  109
   APPC Plug-In Configuration Items  110

Chapter 7  Configuring the CICS Server Adapter RRS Plug-In  113
   Introduction to RRS  114
   Setting up RRS for the CICS Server Adapter  115
   RRS Plug-In Configuration Items  122

Chapter 8  Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals  123
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activating Client Principal Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting up the Required Privileges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Requirements for CICS Protocol Plug-Ins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Chapter 9 | Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS | 135 |
| Customizing CICS | 136 |
| Customizing Orbix Event Logging | 138 |

| Chapter 10 | IDL Compiler Configuration | 141 |
| Orbix IDL Compiler Settings | 142 |

| Part 3 | Configuring the Client Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS |
| Chapter 11 | Introduction to Client Adapter Configuration | 147 |
| A Client Adapter Sample Configuration | 148 |
| Configuration Summary of Client Adapter Plug-Ins | 151 |

| Chapter 12 | Client Adapter General Configuration | 157 |
| Client Adapter Configuration Settings | 158 |

| Chapter 13 | Configuring the Client Adapter AMTP_APPC Plug-in | 161 |
| Setting Up APPC for the Client Adapter | 162 |
| Defining LUs to APPC | 163 |
| Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter | 166 |
| Defining LUs to VTAM | 170 |
| Defining the Required Resources to CICS | 175 |
| Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC | 176 |
| LU-to-LU Security Verification | 177 |
| Protecting LUs | 179 |
| AMTP_APPC Plug-In Configuration Items | 180 |

| Chapter 14 | Configuring the Client Adapter AMTP_XMEM Plug-in | 183 |
| Prerequisites and Further Reading | 184 |
## CONTENTS

| Running the Client Adapter APF-Authorized | 185 |
| Running the Client Adapter in Non-Swappable Address Space | 187 |
| Understanding the Impact of Cross Memory Communication | 189 |
| AMTP_XMEM Plug-In Configuration Items | 191 |

### Chapter 15   Configuring the Client Adapter Subsystem  
#### Client Adapter Subsystem Configuration  
194

### Chapter 16   Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS  
#### Customizing CICS  
198
#### Customizing Orbix Configuration | 200
#### Customizing Orbix Event Logging | 202
#### Customizing Orbix Maximum Segment Size | 204
#### Customizing Orbix Symbolic Destination | 206

### Part 4  Securing and Using the CICS Server Adapter

#### Chapter 17   Securing the CICS Server Adapter  
##### Security Configuration Items  
212
##### Common Security Considerations | 220
##### EXCI-Based Security Considerations  
222
#### CICS Security Mechanisms when Using EXCI | 223
#### Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for EXCI | 226
##### APPC-Based Security Considerations  
229
#### CICS Security Mechanisms when Using APPC | 230
#### Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for APPC | 236

#### Chapter 18   Mapping IDL Interfaces to CICS  
##### The Mapping File  
238
#### Characteristics of the Mapping File | 239
#### Generating a Mapping File | 241
##### Using the IFR as a Source of Type Information  
244
#### Introduction to Using the IFR | 245
#### Registering IDL interfaces with the IFR | 247
#### Informing CICS Server Adapter of a New Interface in the IFR | 250
#### Using an IFR Signature Cache file | 252
Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information
  Introduction to Using a type_info Store 255
  Generating type_info Files using the IDL Compiler 257
  Informing CICS Server Adapter of a new type_info Store File 259

Chapter 19   Using the CICS Server Adapter 261
  Preparing the Server Adapter 263
  Starting the Server Adapter 267
  Stopping the CICS Server Adapter 269
  Running Multiple Server Adapters Simultaneously 270
  Using the MappingGateway Interface 272
  Locating CICS Server Adapter Objects Using itmfoloc 275
  Adding a Portable Interceptor to the CICS Server Adapter 278
    Developing the Portable Interceptor 279
    Compiling the Portable Interceptor 284
    Loading the Portable Interceptor into the CICS Server Adapter 286
  Enabling the GIOP Request Logger Interceptor 289
  Gathering Accounting Information in the Server Adapter 291
    Customizing the Accounting DLL 292
    Compiling the Customized Accounting DLL 296
    Activating the Accounting DLL in the Server Adapter 297
  Exporting Object References at Runtime 298
    Configuration Items for Exporting Object References 299
    Exporting Object References to a File 305
    Exporting Object References to Naming Service Context 306
    Exporting Object References to Naming Service Object Group 308

Part 5  Securing and Using the Client Adapter

Chapter 20   Securing the Client Adapter 315
  Security Configuration Items 316
  Common Security Considerations 321
  APPC Security Considerations 323

Chapter 21   Using the Client Adapter 329
  Starting the Client Adapter 330
# List of Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The Nature of Abstract CORBA Objects</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Role of the ORB in the Basic CORBA Model</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Invoking on a CORBA Object</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Overview of a Simple Orbix Application</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Graphical Overview of the Role of the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Graphical Overview of the Role of the Client Adapter</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>CICS Security Mechanisms for EXCI-Based Server Adapter</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>CICS Security Mechanisms for APPC-Based Server Adapter</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Graphical Overview of a Load Balancing Scenario</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Running Two Client Adapters on the Same z/OS Host</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF FIGURES
List of Tables

Table 1: Initial and Maximum Log Stream Sizes ............................................ 117
Table 2: Client Principal Support and cicsa Plug-In Configuration Items ........... 126
Table 3: Event Logging Settings for the CICS Server Adapter ......................... 138
Table 4: Server Adapter Mapping Member Configuration Settings .................... 143
Table 5: Client Adapter ORB Names .......................................................... 148
Table 6: S390 Assembler Program Variables and Default Values .................... 201
Table 7: Event Logging Settings for the Client Adapter ................................. 202
Table 8: Summary of user IDs used for the CICS Security Checks .................... 227
Table 9: APPC LU Security System Base LU Keyword Definitions .................... 324
Table 10: APPC LU Security Client Adapter LU Keyword Definitions ............... 324
Table 11: Glossary of Acronym Extensions ............................................... 345
Preface

Orbix is a full implementation from of the Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA), as specified by the Object Management Group. Orbix complies with the following specifications:

- CORBA 2.6
- GIOP 1.2 (default), 1.1, and 1.0

Orbix Mainframe is an implementation of the CORBA standard for the z/OS platform. Orbix Mainframe documentation is periodically updated. New versions between releases are available at:

http://www.iona.com/support/docs

Audience

This guide is intended for CICS system programmers who want to configure, secure, and use the CICS server adapter and client adapter that are supplied with Orbix Mainframe. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the basic concepts of CORBA 2.6 and CICS administration.

Related documentation

Orbix Mainframe documentation includes the following related guides:

- IMS Adapters Administrator’s Guide
- COBOL Programmer’s Guide and Reference
- PL/I Programmer’s Guide and Reference
- CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++
- CORBA Programmer’s Reference, C++
- CORBA Administrator’s Guide
- Mainframe Security Guide
- Mainframe Migration and Upgrade Guide
The *Orbix CICS Adapter Programmer’s Guide*, which is based on Orbix 2.3.x rather than Orbix Mainframe 6.x, is also a useful reference. For migration issues refer to the *Mainframe Migration Guide*.

For the latest versions of product documentation, see: http://www.iona.com/support/docs

### Organization of this guide

This guide is divided into the following parts:

**Part 1, “Introduction”**

This part introduces Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA), and Orbix, IONA's implementation of CORBA. It also introduces the CICS server adapter, which is an Orbix server that can connect with CICS; and the client adapter, which enables CICS transactions to connect to CORBA servers running on various platforms.

**Part 2, “Configuring the CICS Server Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS”**

This part describes how to configure the CICS server adapter and the Orbix runtime inside CICS.

**Part 3, “Configuring the Client Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS”**

This part describes how to configure the Orbix Mainframe client adapter and the Orbix runtime inside CICS.

**Part 4, “Securing and Using the CICS Server Adapter”**

This part explains security considerations for the CICS server adapter, and how the server adapter can be used as a bridge between CORBA based messages and CICS programs. It also describes how IDL operation signatures are mapped using the CICS server adapter to CICS.

**Part 5, “Securing and Using the Client Adapter”**

This part explains security considerations for the client adapter, and how the client adapter can be used as a bridge between CORBA based messages and CICS programs.
Appendix A, “Troubleshooting”
This chapter provides an overview of the `MCLOOKUP` utility that can be used for troubleshooting.

Appendix B, “Glossary of Acronyms”
This glossary provides an expansion for each of the acronyms used in this guide.

Additional resources
The Knowledge Base contains helpful articles, written by experts, about Orbix Mainframe, and other products:
http://www.iona.com/support/kb/

If you need help with Orbix Mainframe or any other products, contact technical support:
http://www.progress.com/support

Typographical conventions
This guide uses the following typographical conventions:

- **Constant width**: Constant width (courier font) in normal text represents portions of code, and literal names of items such as classes, functions, variables, and data structures. For example, text might refer to the `CORBA::Object` class.

- **Constant width paragraphs**: Constant width paragraphs represent code examples or information a system displays on the screen. For example:

  ```
  #include <stdio.h>
  ```

- **Italic**: Italic words in normal text represent **emphasis** and **new terms**.

- **Code italic**: Italic words or characters in code and commands represent variable values that you must supply; for example:

  ```
  install-dir/etc/domains
  ```

- **Code bold**: Code bold is used to highlight a piece of code within a particular code sample.
**Keying conventions**

This guide might use the following keying conventions:

- **No prompt** When a command's format is the same for multiple platforms, a prompt is not used.
- `%` A percent sign represents the UNIX command shell prompt for a command that does not require root privileges.
- `$` A dollar sign represents the z/OS UNIX System Services command shell prompt for a command that does not require root privileges.
- `#` A number sign represents the UNIX command shell prompt for a command that requires root privileges.
- `.` Horizontal or vertical ellipses in format and syntax descriptions indicate that material has been eliminated to simplify a discussion.
- `[ ]` Brackets enclose optional items in format and syntax descriptions.
- `{ }` Braces enclose a list from which you must choose an item in format and syntax descriptions.
Part 1
Introduction

In This part

This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to CORBA and Orbix</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the CICS Adapters</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 1

Introduction to CORBA and Orbix

The Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA) standard is specified by the Object Management Group (OMG) and provides the foundation for flexible and open systems. It underlies some of the Internet’s most successful e-business sites, and some of the world’s most complex and demanding enterprise information systems. Orbix is a full implementation of the CORBA standard. Orbix Mainframe is an implementation of CORBA for the z/OS platform. This chapter provides an introductory overview of both CORBA and Orbix.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of CORBA</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Orbix</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Overview of CORBA

Overview

The Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA) provides the foundation for flexible and open systems. It underlies some of the Internet’s most successful e-business sites and some of the world’s most complex and demanding enterprise information systems. This section provides an overview of CORBA in terms of the enterprise information solutions that it provides and the basic principles on which it is based.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why CORBA?</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORBA Objects</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ORB</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORBA Application Basics</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Why CORBA?

#### Overview
CORBA is a standard middleware architecture that can be used to develop and integrate a wide variety of distributed systems that use a variety of hardware, operating systems, and programming languages.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Need for open systems
- Need for high-performance systems
- Open standard solution
- Widely available solution

#### Need for open systems
Today's enterprises need flexible, open information systems. Most enterprises must cope with a wide range of technologies, operating systems, hardware platforms, and programming languages that need to work together to make the enterprise function.

#### Need for high-performance systems
Orbix is a CORBA development platform for building high-performance systems. Its modular architecture supports the most demanding needs for scalability, performance, and deployment flexibility. The Orbix architecture is also language-independent, so you can implement Orbix applications in COBOL, PL/I, C++, or Java that interoperate, via the standard IIOP protocol, with applications built on any CORBA-compliant technology.

#### Open standard solution
CORBA is an open, standard solution for distributed object systems. You can use CORBA to describe your enterprise system in object-oriented terms, regardless of the platforms and technologies used to implement its different parts. CORBA objects communicate directly across a network, using standard protocols, regardless of the programming languages used to create objects or the operating systems and platforms on which the objects run.
CORBA solutions are available for every common environment and are used to integrate applications written in C, C++, Java, Ada, Smalltalk, COBOL, and PL/I, COM, LISP, Python, and XML, running on embedded systems, PCs, UNIX hosts, and mainframes. CORBA objects running in these environments can cooperate seamlessly. Through COMet, IONA’s dynamic bridge between CORBA and COM, they can also interoperate with COM objects. CORBA offers an extensive infrastructure that supports all the features required by distributed business objects. This infrastructure includes important distributed services, such as transactions, messaging, and security.
CORBA Objects

Overview

This subsection describes the most basic components of a CORBA system. It discusses the following topics:

- Nature of abstract CORBA objects
- Object references
- IDL interfaces
- Advantages of IDL

Nature of abstract CORBA objects

A CORBA system provides distributed object capability between applications in a network. A client in a CORBA system is any program that invokes the services (or functions) of a CORBA object. A server in a CORBA system is any program that contains instances of CORBA objects.

CORBA objects are abstract objects in a CORBA system that provide distributed object capability between applications in a network. Figure 1 shows that any part of a CORBA system can refer to the abstract CORBA object, but the object is only implemented in one place and time on some server within the system.

Figure 1: The Nature of Abstract CORBA Objects
Object references

An object reference is used to identify, locate, and address a CORBA object. Clients use an object reference to invoke requests on a CORBA object. CORBA objects can be implemented by servers in any supported programming language, such as COBOL, PL/I, C++, or Java.

For integration with existing transactions in CICS, you can:

- Use the Orbix CICS server adapter to receive CORBA client requests and translate them to program invocations in CICS.
- Use the Orbix CICS client adapter to allow transactions in CICS to initiate CORBA client requests to servers running outside of CICS.

IDL interfaces

Although CORBA objects are implemented using standard programming languages, each CORBA object has a clearly-defined interface, specified in the CORBA Interface Definition Language (IDL). The interface definition specifies which operations (member functions), data types, attributes, and exceptions are available to a client, without making any assumptions about an object’s implementation. Not all IDL data types are supported by the CICS server and client adapters. Refer to “Unsupported IDL Types” on page 52 for more information.

Advantages of IDL

With a few calls to an Object Request Broker’s (ORB’s) application programming interface (API), servers can make CORBA objects available to client programs in your network.

To call member functions on a CORBA object, a client programmer needs only to refer to the object’s interface definition. Clients use their normal programming language syntax to call the member functions of a CORBA object. A client does not need to know which programming language implements the object, the object’s location on the network, or the operating system in which the object exists.

Using an IDL interface to separate an object’s use from its implementation has several advantages. For example, you can change the programming language in which an object is implemented without affecting the clients that access the object. You can also make existing objects available across a network.
The ORB

Overview

CORBA defines a standard architecture for object request brokers (ORBs). An ORB is a software component that mediates the transfer of messages from a program to an object located on a remote network host. The ORB hides the underlying complexity of network communications from the programmer.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Role of an ORB
- Graphical overview

Role of an ORB

An ORB lets you create standard software objects whose member functions can be invoked by client programs located anywhere in your network. A program that contains instances of CORBA objects is often known as a server. However, the same program can serve at different times as a client and a server. For example, a server program might itself invoke calls on other server programs, and so relate to them as a client.

Graphical overview

When a client invokes a member function on a CORBA object, the ORB intercepts the function call. As shown in Figure 2, the ORB redirects the function call across the network to the target object. The ORB then collects results from the function call and returns these to the client.

Figure 2: Role of the ORB in the Basic CORBA Model
CORBA Application Basics

Overview

This subsection describes the basics of how CORBA applications work. It discusses the following topics:

- Developing application interfaces
- Client invocations on CORBA objects
- IDL operation parameters
- Parameter-passing mode qualifiers

Developing application interfaces

The first step in developing a CORBA application is to define interfaces to objects in your system, in CORBA IDL. Then compile these interfaces with an IDL compiler. An IDL compiler can generate COBOL, PL/I, C++ or Java from IDL definitions. The generated code includes client stub code (excluding COBOL and PL/I), which you use to develop client programs; and object skeleton code, which you use to implement CORBA objects in server programs.

Note: With Orbix Mainframe, you can use the IDL compiler to generate only COBOL or PL/I server skeleton code from IDL definitions. The IDL compiler does not generate COBOL or PL/I client stub code.

Your installation of the CICS server adapter includes a server application that runs on z/OS and acts as the CORBA gateway to the CICS system. Your installation of the CICS client adapter includes a client application that runs on z/OS and acts as the CORBA gateway outbound from the CICS system. Sample demonstrations are provided with both the CICS server and client adapter installation programs. These demonstrations are located in the orbixhlq.DEMO.CICS.** PDS range. Samples of both COBOL and PL/I CICS servers and clients are provided. For more details about the COBOL demonstrations, see the sections in the COBOL Programmer’s Guide and Reference on developing a CICS server and a CICS client. For more details about the PL/I demonstrations, see the sections in the PL/I Programmer’s Guide and Reference on developing a CICS server and a CICS client.
Client invocations on CORBA objects

When a client wants to invoke operations on a CORBA object, it invokes on an object reference that it obtains from the server process. As shown in Figure 3 on page 29, a client call is transferred through the client stub code to the ORB. The ORB then passes the function call through the object skeleton code to the target object. Because the implemented object is not located in the client’s address space, CORBA objects are represented in client code by proxy objects.

IDL operation parameters

Each parameter specifies the direction in which its arguments are passed between client and object. Parameter-passing modes clarify operation definitions and allow the IDL compiler to accurately map operations to a target programming language. The Orbix CICS runtime uses parameter-passing modes to determine in which direction (or directions) it must marshal a parameter.

Parameter-passing mode qualifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>in</code></td>
<td>This means that the parameter is initialized only by the client and is passed to the object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**out**  This means that the parameter is initialized only by the object and is passed to the client.

**inout**  This means that the parameter is initialized by the client and passed to the server; the server can modify the value before returning it to the client.
Overview of Orbix

Overview

Orbix is IONA’s implementation of the CORBA standard. This section provides an example of a simple Orbix application and an introduction to the broader Orbix environment.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple Orbix Application</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broader Orbix Environment</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 1 | Introduction to CORBA and Orbix

Simple Orbix Application

Overview

A simple Orbix application might contain a client and a server along with one or more objects (see Figure 4). In this model, the client obtains information about the object it seeks, using object references. An object reference uniquely identifies a local or remote object instance.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Graphical overview
- Explanation of simple application
- Portable object adapter
- Limitations of a simple application

Graphical overview

Figure 4 provides a graphical overview of a simple Orbix application.

Figure 4: Overview of a Simple Orbix Application
**Overview of Orbix**

**Explanation of simple application**

Figure 4 on page 32 shows how an ORB enables a client to invoke on a remote object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>When a server starts, it creates one or more objects and publishes their object references in a <em>naming service</em>. A naming service uses simple names to make object references accessible to prospective clients. Servers can also publish object references to a file or as a URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The client program looks up the object reference by name in the naming service. The naming service returns the server's object reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The client ORB uses the object reference to pass a request to the server object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Portable object adapter**

For simplicity, Figure 4 on page 32 omits details that all applications require. For example, Orbix applications use a Portable Object Adapter (POA), to manage access to server objects. A POA maps object references to their concrete implementations on the server. Given a client request for an object, a POA can invoke the referenced object locally.

The client request embeds the POA name and object ID taken from the published object reference. The server then uses the POA name to invoke the POA. The POA uses the object ID to invoke the desired object, if it exists on the server.

Refer to either the *COBOL Programmer's Guide and Reference* or the *PL/I Programmer's Guide and Reference* for details about the Orbix Mainframe POA.

**Limitations of a simple application**

This simple model uses a naming service to pass object references to clients. The naming service has some limitations and does not support all the needs of enterprise-level applications. For example, naming services are often not designed to handle frequent updates. They are designed to store relatively stable information that is not expected to change very often. If a process stops and restarts frequently, a new object reference must be published with each restart. In production environments where many
servers start and stop frequently, this can overwork a naming service. Enterprise applications also have other needs that are not met by this simple model—for example, on-demand activation, and centralized administration. These needs are met in a broader Orbix environment, as described in “Broader Orbix Environment” on page 35.
Broader Orbix Environment

Overview

Along with the naming service, Orbix offers a number of features that are required by many distributed applications, for flexibility, scalability, and ease of use. This subsection provides an overview of those features. It discusses the following topics:

- Location domains
- Managing object availability
- Configuration domains
- Interface Repository

Location domains

Location domains enable a server and its objects to move to a new process or host, and to be activated on demand. An Orbix location domain consists of two components—a locator daemon and a node daemon:

- locator daemon—This is a CORBA service that acts as the control center for the entire location domain. The locator daemon has two roles:
  - Manage the configuration information used to find, validate, and activate servers running in the location domain.
  - Act as the contact point for clients trying to invoke on servers in the domain.

- node daemon—This acts as the control point for a single host machine in the system. Every machine that runs an application server must run a node daemon. The node daemon starts, monitors, and manages application servers on its machine. The locator daemon relies on node daemons to start processes and tell it when new processes are available.
Managing object availability

A server makes itself available to clients by publishing Interoperable Object References (IORs). An IOR contains an object's identity and address. Refer to “Sample configuration file” on page 265 for an example of an IOR.

When a client invokes on an object, Orbix locates the object as follows:

1. The ORB sends the invocation to the locator daemon.
2. The locator daemon searches the implementation repository for the actual address of a server that runs this object.
3. The locator daemon returns this address to the client.
4. The client connects to the returned server address and directs this and all subsequent requests for this object to that address.

Configuration domains

*Configuration domains* allows you to organize ORBs into independently manageable groups. This brings scalability and ease of use to the largest environments.

Interface Repository

The *Interface Repository (IFR)* provides a source of type information, and allows clients to discover and use additional objects in the environment—even if clients do not know about these objects at compile time. Orbix Mainframe also supplies an alternative to using the IFR; refer to “Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information” on page 254 for more information.
Introduction to the CICS Adapters

The Orbix Mainframe CICS server adapter provides a simple way to integrate distributed CORBA and EJB clients on various platforms with existing and new CICS transactions running on z/OS. It allows you to develop and deploy Orbix COBOL and Orbix PL/I servers in CICS, and to integrate these CICS servers with distributed CORBA clients running on various platforms. It also facilitates the integration of existing CICS transactions, not developed using Orbix, with distributed CORBA clients, without the need for code changes to these existing transactions. The CICS server adapter itself can execute in a native z/OS or UNIX System Services address space.

The Orbix Mainframe client adapter provides a simple way for CICS transactions to act as clients of distributed CORBA servers on various platforms. It allows you to develop and deploy Orbix COBOL and Orbix PL/I clients in CICS. The client adapter itself can execute in a native z/OS or UNIX Systems Services address space.

This chapter provides an introductory overview of both the CICS server adapter and the client adapter that are supplied with Orbix Mainframe.
In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of the Client Adapter</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Overview of the CICS Server Adapter

Overview

The CICS server adapter is an Orbix service that can be deployed in either a native z/OS or UNIX System Services environment. Its function is to integrate distributed CORBA or EJB clients (or both) running on various platforms with existing or new CICS applications (or both) running on z/OS.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Role of the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CICS Server Adapter Processing of IDL Operations</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsupported IDL Types</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Role of the CICS Server Adapter

Overview

The CICS server adapter acts as a bridge between CORBA/EJB clients and CICS servers. It allows you to set up a distributed system that combines the powerful online transaction processing capabilities of CICS with the consistent and well-defined structure of a CORBA environment.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Characteristics of the CICS server adapter
- CICS server adapter functions
- Graphical overview
- Graphical overview explanation

Characteristics of the CICS server adapter

The CICS server adapter has the following characteristics:

- It is a fully dynamic bridge, because the interfaces that it provides to CORBA clients can be changed at runtime.
- It is an Orbix server that is used to allow CICS transactions to process IDL-defined operations. Refer to “CICS Server Adapter Processing of IDL Operations” on page 43 for more details.
- It implements the cicsraw IDL interface. Refer to “The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface” on page 44 for more details.

CICS server adapter functions

The CICS server adapter performs the following functions:

1. It accepts an IDL request or an input COMMAREA from the client.
2. It provides accepted IDL requests or an input COMMAREA to CICS.
3. It runs the CICS program. If it is an IDL-based request, the server adapter marshals the operation parameters for the implementation server program in CICS, performing any necessary data conversion; otherwise, it simply runs the requested program with the supplied input COMMAREA.
4. In the same way, it receives the results from CICS and returns them to the client.
Figure 5 provides a graphical overview of the role of the CICS server adapter.

**Figure 5**: Graphical Overview of the Role of the CICS Server Adapter
Graphical overview explanation

Figure 5 on page 41 provides an overview of the role of the CICS server adapter in integrating distributed CORBA or EJB clients (or both) on different platforms with CICS transactions running on z/OS. The CORBA or EJB clients can be written in languages such as C++ or Java.

The CICS server adapter communicates with CICS using either IBM’s External CICS Interface (EXCI) or Advanced Program to Program Communications (APPC) protocol. A 32K data limit applies when using EXCI, but does not apply when using APPC. As discussed, the CICS server adapter acts as a bridge between CORBA/EJB clients that can be running on various platforms and servers that are running in CICS.
CICS Server Adapter Processing of IDL Operations

Overview
The CICS server adapter is an Orbix server that allows CICS programs to process IDL-defined operations. When the server adapter receives a request from a CORBA/EJB client, it looks up the appropriate CICS program name, based on the requested interface and operation name. The server adapter then marshals incoming data and submits the request to CICS with that program name. When the CICS program receives control via the normal CICS dispatching process, it uses the set of Orbix-provided services to read in the operation’s parameters and marshal the return data, and returns the result to the client.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- List of required IDL interfaces
- CICS server adapter type information

List of required IDL interfaces
The list of interfaces that the CICS server adapter needs to provide to its clients is provided to the server adapter in the form of a mapping file. Refer to “The Mapping File” on page 238 for more details.

CICS server adapter type information
The CICS server adapter obtains IDL interface information (operation signatures) from either the IFR or from a type_info store, depending on the configuration values used. This enables the server adapter to unmarshal the data received from client programs and marshal the response back to the client. (Marshalling is the process whereby the communicated data is converted to a byte stream, so that it can be sent between the client and the server).

The exact manner in which information is loaded depends on the type information mechanism employed (that is, IFR or type_info store). Refer to “Mapping IDL Interfaces to CICS” on page 237 for more information on these mechanisms.
The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface

Overview
This subsection provides an introductory overview of the cicsraw IDL interface, which the CICS server adapter implements. It discusses the following topics:

- What is the cicsraw interface?
- EXCI versus APPC
- Definition of the cicsraw IDL.
- Explanation of the cicsraw IDL.
- Demonstration of the cicsraw interface

What is the cicsraw interface?
The CICS server adapter exposes a CORBA IDL interface, called cicsraw, to its clients. The cicsraw IDL interface defines operations to:

- Specify a CICS program name and an input COMMAREA.
- Run the program in CICS.
- Receive the resulting output COMMAREA.

Note: If you used the previous versions of the CICS server adapter, the cicsraw IDL interface has been modified to scope the cicsraw interface inside a module called IT_MFA_CICS. However, to maintain backwards compatibility with older client applications, the CICS server adapter can be configured to expose the legacy unscoped cicsraw API (see the Mainframe Migration and Upgrade Guide for more details). Also, as stated in the IDL of previous adapter versions, the do_trans() operation has been removed.

EXCI versus APPC
The cicsraw interface is only supported by server adapters that are communicating with CICS over EXCI. It is not supported by server adapters that are communicating with CICS over APPC. In CICS, the called program is responsible for conversation handling (unlike in IMS, where the IMS system is responsible for conversation handling and simply passes the segments to the called transaction). Therefore, when communicating with CICS over APPC, you can only call a program that has been coded to be the other partner in an APPC conversation, rather than a program that takes a COMMAREA as input.
The following shows the IDL definitions contained within the cicsraw IDL interface:

**Example 1:** The cicsraw IDL Interface (Sheet 1 of 3)

```idl
//IDL
#pragma prefix "iona.com"
module IT_MFA_CICS
{
    interface cicsraw {
        typedef string<8> programName;
        typedef sequence<char> CharBuffer;
        typedef sequence<octet> ByteBuffer;
        typedef string<4> CICSabend;
        typedef char transid[4];

        exception CICSunavailable {
            string reason;
        };
        exception unknownProgramName {};
        exception commareaTooLarge {};
        exception userNotAuthorized {
            string reason;
        };
        exception programFailed {
            unsigned long elbresp;
            unsigned long elbresp2;
            CICSabend abendCode;
        };
        exception internalError {
            string reason;
        };

        // Methods for invoking CICS server programs.
        // The first uses CharBuffer, so data is subject
        // to ASCII-EBCDIC conversion cross-platforms, the
        // second uses a ByteBuffer so no conversion will be
        // done.
        void run_program(
```
Example 1: The cicsraw IDL Interface  (Sheet 2 of 3)

```c
void run_program_binary{
    in programName program_name,
    inout ByteBuffer commarea
} raises ( 
    commareaTooLarge,
    CICSUnavailable,
    unknownProgramName,
    userNotAuthorized,
    programFailed,
    internalError
)

void run_program_with_tran(
    in programName program_name,
    in transid transaction_id,
    inout CharBuffer commarea
) raises ( 
    commareaTooLarge,
    CICSUnavailable,
    unknownProgramName,
    userNotAuthorized,
    programFailed,
    internalError
);
```

// // Methods for invoking CICS server programs with the // mirror transaction name specified. // // This is for the EXCI based CICS adapter only. // // The first uses a CharBuffer, so data is subject // to ASCII-EBCDIC conversion cross-platforms, the // second uses a ByteBuffer so no conversion will be // done. // //
Explanation of the cicsraw IDL

The cicsraw interface can be explained as follows:

1. This pragma prefix indicates that the IDL was developed by IONA.
2. The cicsraw interface is within the IT_MFA_CICS module scope. The IT_prefix is a naming convention that is used to signify IDL modules developed by IONA. This helps to avoid naming clashes in the global scope.
3. It defines five data types:
   - **programName**, which is a bounded string of up to eight characters.
   - **CharBuffer**, which is a sequence of char types.
   - **ByteBuffer**, which is a sequence of octet types.
   - **CICSabend**, which is a bounded string of up to four characters.
   - **transid**, which is a bounded string of up to four characters.
4. It defines a series of exceptions that can be used to describe errors that might occur when running a CICS program. Any such errors are returned to the client, using this series of exceptions. This means that a client program can catch and handle any errors that might be used for diagnostic purposes or for which a useful response is possible. See “Exception information for APPC” on page 50 and “Exception information for EXCI” on page 51 for more details of these exceptions.

5. It defines operations called `run_program()` and `run_program_binary()`. These operations are similar in that:
   - They are both provided for passing COMMAREA data to a CICS program.
   - They both take an `in` parameter called `program_name`, and an `inout` parameter called `commarea`. The `program_name` parameter specifies the CICS program that the client wants to invoke. The `commarea` parameter is used by the client to pass the COMMAREA data to the CICS program. The `commarea` parameter is also used by the CICS server adapter, to pass the processed data from the CICS program back to the client.

   The two operations differ in the type of the `commarea` parameter, as follows:
   - The `commarea` parameter for `run_program()` is of the `CharBuffer` type. This means that the CICS server adapter performs ASCII-to-EBCDIC translations when it is sending the buffer that contains the COMMAREA across different platforms. However, if the client input is a mixture of character and numeric data, the numeric data might be corrupted by the ASCII-to-EBCDIC conversion process, and the CICS program is then unable to process the inputs. The easiest solution in this case is to have the CICS program receive all its input in character format, and to have the CICS server adapter use the `run_program()` operation to convert the data to EBCDIC format before supplying it to CICS.
The commarea parameter for run_program_binary() is of the ByteBuffer type. This means that the data passed from a non-EBCDIC platform to z/OS is not converted. In such cases, where the COMMAREA contains a mixture of character and non-character data, there are two possible solutions. The first solution is to have the client call run_program_binary and translate all the character data to EBCDIC. (However, this translation is awkward and is not portable across different client platforms.) The second solution is to modify the CICS program, so that it only accepts character input.

6. It defines operations called run_program_with_tran() and run_program_binary_with_tran(). These operations are similar to run_program() and run_program_binary(). The only difference is that they also have an extra in parameter called transaction_id, which allows for the mirror transaction to be specified. The run_program() and run_program_binary() operations pick up a default mirror transaction specified in the configuration domain.

7. The readonly attribute, maxCommareaSize, allows the client to retrieve the maximum COMMAREA length for which the CICS server adapter was configured when it was started. Because this is a readonly attribute, clients can read its value, but they cannot set it.

As long as your CICS program uses a COMMAREA for all input and output, no changes are required to it.
### Exception information for APPC

For APPC, the exception information that can be raised by the `cicsraw` interface can be explained as follows:

- **reason**
  The reason string is usually created from a call to `ATBEES3()`, with some other available information, such as the return code from the `ATBxxx` call, added where applicable. For failures that do not involve APPC, a reason string is generated by the adapter to describe the failure.

- **exception CICSunavailable { string reason; };**
  A `CICSunavailable` exception is thrown when `ATBALC5()` fails with `k_badDestname`, `k_remoteLUnotActive`, or `k_remoteLUnotActive2`.

- **exception unknownTransactionName {}**;
  An `unknownTransactionName` exception is thrown when `ATBSEND()`, `ATBRCVW()`, or `ATBDEAL()` fails with `CM_TPN_NOT_RECOGNIZED`.

- **exception segmentTooLarge {}**;
  A `segmentTooLarge` exception is thrown if one of the input segments exceeds the maximum length specified for segments in the adapter configuration file.

- **exception userNotAuthorized { string reason; };**
  A `userNotAuthorized` exception is thrown when `ATBSEND()`, `ATBRCVW()`, or `ATBDEAL()` fails with `CM_SECURITY_NOT_VALID`. It can also be thrown if the `plugins:cicssa:use_client_principal` configuration item is set to `yes` but the principal received does not look like a valid RACF user ID.

- **exception transactionFailed { string reason; };**
  A `transactionFailed` exception is thrown when `ATBSEND()` fails with `CM_PROGRAM_ERROR_NO_TRUNC`.

- **exception internalError { string reason; };**
  An `internalError` exception is thrown for all other failures. Refer to the adapter event log output for more details on what caused a specific exception.
Exception information for EXCI

For EXCI, the exception information that can be raised by the cicsraw interface can be explained as follows:

- **exception CICSunavailable**
  A CICSunavailable exception is thrown when EXCI returns NO_CICS_IRC_STARTED, NO_PIPE, or NO_CICS reason codes. It can also be thrown for a reason code of IRC_CONNECT_FAILURE with a subreason of IRERRNSS or -1.

- **exception unknownProgramName**
  An unknownProgramName exception is thrown if the program name is more than eight characters in length. It can also be returned if CICS returns a DPL response code of EXEC_PGMIDERR.

- **exception commareaTooLarge**
  A commareaTooLarge exception is thrown if the commarea received from the client application is either larger than the limit specified in the adapter configuration file or larger than 32K.

- **exception userNotAuthorized**
  A userNotAuthorized exception is thrown if the adapter is configured to use client principals for calls to CICS, but the received principal is malformed. It can also be thrown for a reason code of IRC_CONNECT_FAILURE with a subreason of IRERRSCF.

- **exception programFailed**
  A programFailed exception is thrown for any error, except EXEC_PGMIDERR, that is returned by DPL on the EXCI DPL_request call.

- **exception internalError**
  An internalError exception is thrown for all other failures. Refer to the adapter event log output for more details on what caused a specific exception. This includes errors that are caused by the CICS adapter being configured to use the client principal, but not subsequently being able to log onto CICS with the principal provided by the client.

Demonstration of the cicsraw interface

A C++ demonstration client for the cicsraw interface is supplied with the other C++ demonstrations in your Orbix Mainframe installation. Follow the instructions in the supplied readme to run the client application.
Unsupported IDL Types

Overview

This section provides an overview of the IDL types that the CICS server adapter does not support.

Unsupported types

The following IDL types are not currently supported by the CICS server adapter:

- Object references.
- Value types, and other Pseudo-object types.
- wchar and wstring

Overview of the Client Adapter

Overview

The Orbix Mainframe client adapter is an Orbix service that can be deployed in a native z/OS or UNIX System Services environment. Its function is to allow CICS transactions to act as clients of CORBA servers running on various platforms.

The client adapter acts as a bridge between CICS client transactions and CORBA servers. The client adapter allows you to set up a distributed system that combines the powerful online transaction processing capabilities of CICS with the consistent and well-defined structure of a CORBA environment.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Characteristics of the client adapter
- Client adapter functions
- Graphical overview

Characteristics of the client adapter

The client adapter has the following characteristics:

- It is a mirror implementation of the CICS server adapter in that it adapts CORBA requests that originate in CICS, whereas the CICS server adapter adapts CORBA requests destined for CICS. Figure 6 on page 55 provides an overview of the role of the client adapter in integrating CICS client transactions with distributed CORBA servers on different platforms.
- It uses APPC or cross memory to communicate with CICS.
- It implements the CORBA invocation facility using the Orbix Dynamic Invocation Interface (DII), and uses the IFR server or a type_info store to obtain type information. Refer to the CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++ for more information on the DII.
• It provides an optional caching feature to improve performance. It can cache target object references and type information for operations.
• It is a multi-threaded application that can service multiple concurrent client requests.
• It can service multiple CICS regions.
• It supports two-phase commit processing initiated from CICS transactions when using APPC communication.

Client adapter functions

The client adapter performs the following functions:
• It accepts a request from a CICS client transaction.
• It locates the target CORBA object and invokes the requested operation.
• It returns the CORBA object reply to the CICS client transaction.

Graphical overview

Figure 6 on page 55 provides a graphical overview of the role of the client adapter. It shows the role of the client adapter in integrating distributed CORBA servers on different platforms with CICS client transactions running on z/OS.

The CICS client transactions can be written in COBOL or PL/I. The clients make a call to the COBOL or PL/I runtime that identifies both the target object and the operation to perform, and supplies in, inout, and out parameters. The COBOL or PL/I runtime uses the APPC protocol or cross memory to communicate with the client adapter, and passes the client request to it. The client adapter locates the target server object and invokes the requested operation. The results are then returned back to the CICS client transaction. A CICS client transaction can process requests to servers using two-phase commit processing when using APPC for communication.
Figure 6: Graphical Overview of the Role of the Client Adapter
Part 2
Configuring the CICS Server Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS

In this part
This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to CICS Server Adapter Configuration</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the CICS Server Adapter EXCI Plug-In</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the CICS Server Adapter APPC Plug-In</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the CICS Server Adapter RRS Plug-In</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDL Compiler Configuration</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction to CICS Server Adapter Configuration

This chapter provides information needed to configure the CICS server adapter and its components (plug-ins). It provides descriptions of all the configuration items involved in running the server adapter. It also provides details on configuring the various system components used by the server adapter. These components include CICS, EXCI, APPC/MVS, and RRMS.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| A CICS Server Adapter Sample Configuration | page 60 |
| Configuration Summary of Adapter Plug-Ins    | page 65 |
### Overview
A sample configuration member is supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation that provides an example of how you might configure and deploy the CICS server adapter on both native z/OS and UNIX System Services.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Location of configuration templates
- Configuration scope
- Configuration scope example

### Location of configuration templates
Sample configuration templates are supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation in the following locations:

- **Non-TLS template**—`orbixhlq.CONFIG(BASETPL)`
- **TLS template**—`orbixhlq.CONFIG(TLSTPL)`

**Note:** Further configuration resides in `orbixhlq.CONFIG(ORXINTRL)`. This contains internal configuration that should not usually require any modifications.

### Configuration scope
An ORBname of `iona_services.cicsa` has been chosen for the CICS server adapter service. Therefore, the corresponding configuration items that are specific to the server adapter are scoped within an `iona_services.cicsa` configuration scope.
Configuration scope example

The following is an example of the `iona_services.cicsa` configuration scope.

**Example 2: iona_services.cicsa Configuration Scope  (Sheet 1 of 3)**

```plaintext
iona_services
{
    thread_pool:high_water_mark = "100";
    orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream","iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop", "ots"];
    generic_server:wto_announce:enabled = "true";
    --
    cicsa
    {
        event_log:filters = ["*=WARN+ERROR+FATAL", "IT_MFA=INFO_HI+WARN+ERROR+FATAL"];
        plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence = "no";
        plugins:cicsa:poa_prefix = "IT_MFA_CICS_";
        #
        # Settings for well-known addressing:
        # (mandatory if direct_persistence is enabled)
        # plugins:cicsa:iiop:port = "5007";
        # plugins:cicsa:iiop:host = "%(LOCAL_HOSTNAME)";
        #
        # List of mappings of interface/operation -> CICS prog name
        # PDS member or HFS filename may be specified
        plugins:cicsa:mapping_file = "DD:MFAMAPS";
        #
        # The adapter may be configured to use type_info files or
        # to contact the IFR to attain type information dynamically
        # during runtime.
        #
        # * To configure to use type_info files:
        # (note: source may be a PDS or HFS pathname)
        # plugins:cicsa:repository_id = "type_info";
        # plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "%(LOCAL_HFS_ROOT)/info.txt";
        #
        # * To configure to use the IFR:
        # plugins:cicsa:repository_id = "ifr";
        # plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache = "";
        
        plugins:cicsa:repository_id = "type_info";
        plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "DD:TYPEINFO";
        plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache = "";
```
# Use the following to display timing information on adapter requests
# plugins:cicsa:display_timings = "yes";
#
# Choose a CICS protocol plugin: cics_exci or cics_appc
# initial_references:IT_cicsraw:plugin = "cics_exci";
#initial_references:IT_cicsraw:plugin = "cics_appc";
plugins:cics_exci:applid = "CICSTS1";
plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name = "ORXPIPE1";
plugins:cics_exci:default_tran_id = "ORX1";
plugins:cics_exci:pipe_type = "SPECIFIC";
plugins:cics_exci:max_comm_area_length = "32000";

plugins:cics_appc:cics_destination_name = "ORBIXCIC";
plugins:cics_appc:appc_outbound_lu_name = "ORXXLU02";
plugins:cics_appc:timeout = "6";
plugins:cics_appc:segment_length = "32767";

# Activate this to display accounting info
# plugins:cicsa:call_accounting_dll = "yes";
#
# Update the following to enable GIOP request logging:
# orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "request_logger", ...];
# binding:server_binding_list = ["request_logger", ""];
#
# For RRS/OTS support, add:
# event_log:filters = ["IT_REQUEST_LOGGER=*", ...];
#
# plugins:rrs:rm_name = "TEST.CICSRAW.IONA.UA";
# initial_references:IT_RRS:plugin = "rrs";
#
# For client principal support, add/update:
# plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal = "yes";
# plugins:cicsa:use_client_password = "no";
#
# And add the following if the client cannot send principals in a
# service context over GIOP 1.2 in a format recognised by the GIOP plugin
# policies:iiop:server_version_policy = "1.1";
#
# For publishing IORs from the adapter, add the following:
#
# Publishing to a USS file:
# plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["filesystem"];
# plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename = "%{LOCAL_HFS_ROOT}/test.txt";
Publishing to a DD file that has to be defined in the JCL:

```bash
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["filesystem"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename = "DD:MFAIORS";
```

Publishing to a naming service context:

```bash
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["naming_service"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context = "test_context";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create = "true";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode = "current";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes = "false";
```

Publishing to a naming service group:

```bash
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["naming_service"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix = "group1_";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name = "adapter2";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode = "current";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes = "false";
```

For the Adapter portable interceptor demo, please add "demo_sec" and "portable_interceptor" to your orb_plugins list. If you need an example, please refer to the orb_plugins list in the iona_services scope. Afterwards, please uncomment the next three configuration settings.

```bash
orb_plugins = [ ... , "demo_sec", "portable_interceptor"];
```

Performance management logging: enable the remote logging feature by updating/adding the following:

```bash
orb_plugins = [ ... , "it_response_time_logger" ];
binding:server_binding_list = ["IT_response_time_logger"];
plugins:it_response_time_collector:period = "60"; # secs
plugins:it_response_time_collector:server-id = "cicsa_1";
plugins:it_response_time_collector:remote_logging_enabled = "true";
initial_references:IT_PerfLoggingReceiver:reference = "..."; # IOR or corbaloc of remote logger
```
Configuring a domain

Refer to the CORBA Administrator’s Guide for more details on how to configure an Orbix configuration domain.

**Note:** The configuration items shown in Example 2 can be used to deploy an insecure server adapter. See “Securing and Using the CICS Server Adapter” on page 209 for more details about the configuration items that are involved in deploying a server adapter in secure mode.
Overview

Orbix configuration allows you to configure an application on a per-plug-in basis. This section provides a summary of the configuration items associated with plug-ins specific to the CICS server adapter.

This section discusses the following topics:

- CICS server adapter plug-ins
- Summary of items for the cicsa plug-in
- Summary of items for the cics_exci plug-in
- Summary of items for the cics_appc plug-in
- Summary of items for the rrs plug-in
- Summary of remaining configuration items

Note: See “Securing the CICS Server Adapter” on page 211 for more details about the items relating to the ISF security plug-in.

CICS server adapter plug-ins

There are four plug-ins associated with the CICS server adapter:

- The cicsa plug-in is the core CICS server adapter plug-in.
- The cics_exci plug-in is used specifically for communications with CICS over EXCI.
- The cics_appc plug-in is used specifically for communications with CICS over APPC.
- The rrs plug-in provides integration for the Object Transaction Service (OTS) and CICS commit processing. This plug-in is optional and can only be used if RRS is configured and RRS support in CICS is enabled. It can only be used with the cics_exci plug-in.

Note: Either the EXCI or APPC plug-in should be selected with the initial_references:IT_cicsraw:plugin configuration variable.
### Summary of items for the cicsa plug-in

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the cicsa plug-in. Refer to “CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details” on page 77 for more details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>iiop:port</code></td>
<td>Specifies the TCP/IP port number that the CICS server adapter uses to listen for incoming requests. Valid values are in the range 1025–65535. This is an optional item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>direct_persistence</code></td>
<td>Specifies the persistence mode adopted by the CICS server adapter service. This is an optional item. <code>iiop:port</code> is required if this is specified as <code>yes</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>poa_prefix</code></td>
<td>Specifies the POA prefix name. This is an optional item. The default value is <code>IT_MFA_</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>iiop:host</code></td>
<td>Specifies the host name that is contained in IORs exported by the CICS server adapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>alternate_endpoint</code></td>
<td>Allows requests to the MappingGateway administrative interface to be processed by threads on an alternate workqueue instead of using the thread resources of the main automatic workqueue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mapping_file</code></td>
<td>This file contains the mapping entries. Refer to “The Mapping File” on page 238 for more details. Optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>repository_id</code></td>
<td>Specifies the type information source to use. This source supplies the CICS server adapter with operation signatures as required. Valid values are <code>ifr</code>, <code>type_info</code>, and <code>none</code>. The default is <code>ifr</code>. Refer to “Type information mechanism” on page 85 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ifr:cache</code></td>
<td>This value is used if <code>repository_id</code> is set to “ifr”. The <code>ifr:cache</code> configuration item is optional, specifying the location of an (operation) signature cache file. This signature cache file contains a cache of operation signatures from a previous run of this server adapter. The default is no signature cache file (“”).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>type_info:source</code></td>
<td>This value is used if <code>repository_id</code> is set to &quot;type_info&quot;. The <code>type_info:source</code> variable denotes the location of a type_info store from which the server adapter can obtain operation signatures. Refer to &quot;type_info store&quot; on page 86 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>use_client_principal</code></td>
<td>Indicates that the CICS server adapter should verify the client principal user ID with SAF before trying to start the target CICS program under that ID. The default is no.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>use_client_principal_user_security</code></td>
<td>Used with the CICS EXCI plug-in. When set to true, this indicates that the CICS server adapter should provide the client principal user ID on the request to start the target CICS program. The default is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>use_client_password</code></td>
<td>Indicates that the CICS server adapter should use a client password when it wants to switch the thread that is making the request to CICS to the user ID passed in the client principal, instead of using SURROGAT rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>display_timings</code></td>
<td>Displays timestamps at various processing points for a request with information being written to SYSPRINT. Refer to &quot;Displaying transaction processing times&quot; on page 83 for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>display_timings_in_logfile</code></td>
<td>Displays timestamps at various processing points for a request with information being written to the Orbix event log. This sends messages to SYSOUT by default. Refer to &quot;Displaying transaction processing times&quot; on page 83 for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>call_accounting_dll</code></td>
<td>If set to yes, this causes the accounting DLL to be called and accounting statistics to be displayed after each client request has been processed by the adapter. The default is no. Refer to “Activating the Accounting DLL in the Server Adapter” on page 297 for more details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**capture_first_argument_in_dynany**

If set to yes, this passes the first argument of the request to the `IT_MFA_display_account_information()` function as a dynamic any. The default is no. Refer to “Activating the Accounting DLL in the Server Adapter” on page 297 for more details.

**object_publishers**

Specifies where the adapter can publish its object references. Valid options are `naming_service` to publish object references to the Naming Service, and `filesystem` to publish object references to file. The default value is "". See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

**write_iors_to_file**

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename` configuration item described next.

**object_publisher:filesystem:filename**

This supersedes the `plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_file` configuration item. It specifies the file that should be used if you want the adapter to export object references to a file. You can specify the full path to an HFS filename, a PDS member name, or a PDS name as the value for this item. If this configuration item is not included in the adapter’s configuration, no object references are exported to file. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

**write_iors_to_ns_context**

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context` configuration item described next.
### object_publisher:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>naming_service:</strong></th>
<th><strong>context</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This supersedes the `plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_context` configuration item. It specifies the Naming Service context that should be used if you want the adapter to export object references to a Naming Service context. If this configuration item is not included in the adapter's configuration, no object references are exported to a Naming Service context. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

### object_publisher:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>naming_service:</strong></th>
<th><strong>context:</strong></th>
<th><strong>auto_create</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This specifies whether the Naming Service context specified by `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context` should be created if it does not exist. Valid options are `true` and `false`. The default value is `true`.

### object_publisher:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>naming_service:</strong></th>
<th><strong>update_mode</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Specifies whether adapter-deployed objects should only be published during start-up, or whether updates should also be published. Valid values are `startup` and `current`. The default value is `startup`. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

### place_iors_in_nested_ns_scopes

This item has been deprecated and is superseded by the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes` configuration item described next.

When using Naming Service contexts and `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create is set to true`, contexts are created for IDL module scopes. For example, `Simple/SimpleObject` with `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context set to base creates a context tree of /base/Simple for SimpleObject`.

The default for `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes` is `false`. 
This supersedes the `object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes` configuration item. If this configuration item is set to `false`, the IOR is stored in the specified scope in the Naming Service. If this configuration item is set to `true`, the module name(s) of the interface for the IOR are used to navigate subscopes from the configured scope, with the same names as the module names, and the IOR is then placed within the relevant subscope. The default is `false`. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

If set to `yes`, this instructs the adapter to export object references for the `MappingGateway` interface, the `cicsraw` interface, and all interfaces specified in the adapter mapping file.

If set to `no`, this instructs the adapter to export object references for the `MappingGateway` and `cicsraw` interfaces only. The default is `no`. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

**Note:** This configuration item is only used by the deprecated object publishing configuration items. When using the new object publishing configuration items, all IORs are published.
If set to yes, this instructs the adapter to unbind the object references from the Naming Service when shutting down normally. The default is no. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

**Note:** This configuration item is only used by the deprecated object publishing configuration items. When using the new object publishing configuration items, the setting of `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode` determines if the server adapter attempts to unbind object references from the Naming Service when it shuts down normally. A setting of `current` causes the server adapter to attempt to unbind references at shutdown.

This item has been deprecated and is superseded by the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix` configuration item described next.

This supersedes the `plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_group_with_prefix` configuration item. It specifies the prefix that should be attached to each generated name indicating an interface, if you want the adapter to export object references to a Naming Service object group. This prefix is attached to the generated name, to specify the object group that is to be used.

If this configuration item is not included in the adapter's configuration, no object references are exported to any Naming Service object groups. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

This item has been deprecated and is superseded by the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name` configuration item described next.
Summary of items for the cics_exci plug-in

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the cics_exci plug-in. Refer to “EXCI Plug-In Configuration Items” on page 94 for more details.

- **object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name**
  - This supersedes the `plugins:cicsa:write_ior_to_ns_group_member_name` configuration item. It specifies the member name that the adapter should use in the object group. A unique member name must be specified for each adapter; otherwise, one adapter might end up replacing the object group members of another adapter. See “Exporting Object References at Runtime” on page 298 for more details.

- **Applid**
  - Specifies the APPLID of the CICS region to which the server adapter is to connect. The default is CISCAPPL.

- **pipe_name**
  - Specifies the NETNAME of a CICS-specific EXCI connection for the CICS server adapter to use. The default is ORXPIPE1.

- **pipe_type**
  - Specifies whether specific or generic EXCI sessions are to be used. Valid values are SPECIFIC and GENERIC. The default is SPECIFIC.

- **default_tran_id**
  - Specifies the default EXCI mirror transaction ID that is used on the CICS EXCI when the client makes a request. The default is ORX1.

- **max_comm_area_length**
  - Specifies the maximum size, in bytes, of the COMMAREA block (that is, the buffer that is to be available to exchange data with the CICS programs). The default value is 32000.

- **check_if_cics_available**
  - If this is set to yes, CICS must be available before you start the CICS server adapter in EXCI mode. The default is no, to allow the CICS server adapter to start even if CICS is not available.
Summary of items for the cics_appc plug-in

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the cics_appc plug-in. Refer to the “APPC Plug-In Configuration Items” on page 110 for more details.

- **cics_destination_name**: Specifies a symbolic name that identifies the APPC LU (Logical Unit) name for the CICS region to which the CICS server adapter connects. The default value is ORBXCICS.

- **appc_outbound_lu_name**: Specifies the CICS server adapter’s APPC LU name. The default value is none, which means that the system base LU is used.

- **timeout**: Specifies the number of minutes that the CICS server adapter waits for a response from CICS before cancelling the request. The default value is no timeout.

- **segment_length**: Specifies the maximum size, in bytes, of each APPC data segment. The default value is 32767, which is also the maximum.

Summary of items for the rrs plug-in

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the rrs plug-in. Refer to “RRS Plug-In Configuration Items” on page 122 for more details.

- **rm_name**: The resource manager name that the CICS server adapter uses to register with RRS. Ensure that this variable is not specified in the configuration scope of the CICS server adapter, if you do not want the RRS plug-in loaded.

- **initial_references:IT_RRS:plugin**: Indicates to the CICS server adapter that it is the plug-in to loaded to enable communication with RRS. This is required if the rrs plug-in is used.
The following is a summary of the remaining configuration items. Refer to “CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details” on page 77 and the CORBA Administrator’s Guide for more details.

- **thread_pool:initial_threads**: Specifies the initial number of threads that are created in the thread pool to send requests to CICS. This item is optional. The default value is 5.

- **thread_pool:high_water_mark**: Specifies the maximum number of threads created in the CICS server adapter thread pool to send requests to CICS. This item is optional. Default value is -1.

- **event_log:filters**: Specifies the types of events that the CICS server adapter logs.

- **orb_plugins**: List of standard ORB plug-ins the CICS server adapter should load.

- **initial_references:IT_MFA:reference**: IOR used by itadmin to contact the CICS server adapter—added to configuration after the server adapter has been run in prepare mode.

- **initial_references:IT_cicraw:plugin**: Specifies the CICS transport-level plug-in that is to be loaded. Valid values are cics_exci and cics_appc. When preparing the CICS server adapter, using the JCL in orbixhlq.JCLLIB(PREPCICA), this must be set to cics_exci to allow the prepare JOB to complete with condition codes of zero.
Configuration Summary of Adapter Plug-Ins

initial_references:IT_WTO_Announce:plugin
This is used in conjunction with generic_server:wto_announce:enabled to enable the loading of the WTO announce plug-in in an Orbix service, such as the CICS server adapter. This item must be set to wto_announce to enable messages to be written to the operator console on starting or shutting down successfully.

generic_server:wto_announce:enabled
This is used in conjunction with initial_references:IT_WTO_Announce:plugin to enable the loading of the WTO announce plug-in in an Orbix service, such as the CICS server adapter. This item must be set to true to enable messages to be written to the operator console on starting or shutting down successfully.

policies:iiop:server_version_policy
If this is set to 1.1, the server adapter publishes a version 1.1 IOR which instructs clients to communicate over GIOP 1.1. If this is set to 1.2 (the default), 1.2 is used as the default GIOP version. See “Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals” on page 123 for more details.

policies:giop:interop_policy:
enable_principal_service_context
For GIOP 1.2, if this is set to true, it instructs the CICS server adapter to look for the principal string in a service context. The default is false. See “Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals” on page 123 for more details.
If `principal_service_context_id` is set to `true`, this item specifies the service context ID from which the CICS server adapter attempts to read the principal string. See “Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals” on page 123 for more details.
CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details

This chapter provides details of the configuration items for the CICS Server Adapter’s application service plug-in. These items are used to specify parameters such as TCP/IP transport details, the level of Orbix event logging, and mapping information for mapping IDL operations to CICS programs.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topic:

- CICS Server Adapter Service Configuration  page 78
CICS Server Adapter Configuration Details

CICS Server Adapter Service Configuration

Overview

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Persistence mode
- Host name
- Well known addressing
- Initial threads in thread pool
- Maximum threads in thread pool
- Alternate workqueue for the MappingGateway
- IT_cicsraw initial reference
- IT_MFA initial reference
- Orbix event logging
- WTO announce plug-in
- ORB plug-ins list
- POA prefix
- Displaying transaction processing times
- Mapping file
- Type information mechanism
- IFR signature cache file
- type_info store

Persistence mode

The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence`. It specifies the persistence mode policy adopted by the CICS server adapter. If you want the server adapter to run as a standalone service, set this to `yes`. If you set this to `no`, the server adapter contacts and registers with the locator service.

Host name

The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:iiop:host`. It specifies the name of the host on which the CICS server adapter is running. This host name is contained in IORs exported by the CICS server adapter.
### Well known addressing

Configuration items for well known addressing can be specified on the IIOP and secure IIOP plug-ins that are loaded by the CICS server adapter. For example, you can use `plugins:cicsa:iiop:port` to specify a fixed TCP/IP port that the CICS server adapter uses to listen for insecure incoming CORBA requests. If the adapter is running with direct persistence enabled, the specified port number is published in the IORs generated by the adapter in prepare mode, and in any IORs returned by the MappingGateway interface.

Refer to “Using the MappingGateway Interface” on page 272 for more details. If the adapter is running in indirect persistent mode, the locator’s addressing information is published in the IORs; however, in this case, the adapter still listens on the specified port.

The specified port number cannot be less than 1025, because the TCP/IP port numbers up to and including 1024 are reserved for TCP/IP services. Therefore, ensure that you do not use a port that is allocated to some other TCP/IP service on the machine. The server adapter checks to see if the port is available before it attempts to use it.

### Initial threads in thread pool

The related configuration item is `thread_pool:initial_threads`. It specifies the initial number of threads that are created in the thread pool to send requests to CICS. This item is optional. The default value is 5.

### Maximum threads in thread pool

The related configuration item is `thread_pool:high_water_mark`. It specifies the maximum number of threads created in the CICS server adapter thread pool to send requests to CICS. This item is optional. Default value is -1.

### Alternate workqueue for the MappingGateway

The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint`. It allows the CICS server adapter to be configured so that requests to the MappingGateway administrative interface are processed by threads on an alternate workqueue instead of using the thread resources of the main automatic workqueue. This allows the main workqueue to remain dedicated to processing requests that are destined for CICS.
The associated thread pool settings can then be configured as follows:

```plaintext
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:thread_pool:high_water_mark = "-1";
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:thread_pool:low_water_mark = "-1";
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:thread_pool:initial_threads = "2";
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:thread_pool:max_queue_size = "-1";
```

The preceding values correspond to the default settings that are assumed if these items are omitted from the CICS server adapter configuration. See the *CORBA Administrator’s Guide* for general information on thread pools and workqueues.

If you have configured the CICS server adapter to use direct persistence, you must specify the addressing information for the listener associated with the MappingGateway interface’s alternate endpoint. You can specify well-known addressing information as follows:

```plaintext
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:iiop:port = "5007";
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint:iiop:host = "hostname";
```

The IOR that is published by the server adapter for the MappingGateway interface now includes this addressing information.

**IT_cicsraw initial reference**

The related configuration item is `initial_references:IT_cicsraw:plugin`. The `cicsa` plug-in uses this configuration item to establish the name of the CICS transport-level plug-in to be loaded. To load the CICS EXCI plug-in, set this item to `cics_exci`. To load the CICS APPC plug-in, set this item to `cics_appc`.

This plug-in is used by the CICS server adapter service to communicate with CICS—it is therefore required for processing both the `cicsraw` interface and mapped IDL interface requests. This item is required.

**Note:** When preparing the CICS server adapter, using the JCL in `orbixhlg.JCLLIB(PREPCICA)`, set this value to `cics_exci`. This allows the prepare JOB to complete with condition codes of zero.
IT_MFA initial reference

The related configuration item is `initial_references:IT_MFA:reference`. This specifies the IOR that is used by `itadmin` to contact the CICS server adapter. This is added to the adapter configuration after the server adapter has been run in prepare mode.

Orbix event logging

The related configuration item is `event_log:filters`. It is used in Orbix configuration to specify the level of event logging. To obtain events specific to the CICS server adapter, the `IT_MFA` event logging subsystem can be added to this list item. For example:

```
event_log:filters = ["*=WARN+ERROR+FATAL",
                   "IT_MFA=INFO_HI+INFO_MED+WARN+ERROR+FATAL"];
```

This then logs all `IT_MFA` events (except for `INFO_LOW` — low priority informational events), and any warning, error, and fatal events from all other subsystems (for example, `IT_CORE`, `IT_GIOP`, and so on). The level of detail that is provided for `IT_MFA` events can therefore be controlled by setting the relevant logging levels. Refer to the `CORBA Administrator's Guide` for more details.

The following is a categorization of the informational events associated with the `IT_MFA` subsystem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INFO_HI</td>
<td>Configuration settings and CICS server adapter startup and shutdown messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO_MED</td>
<td>Mapping gateway actions and CICS EXCI/APPC calls, including return codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO_LOW</td>
<td>CICS segment data streams and RRS actions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** To enable the logging of user ID details sent into CICS via EXCI when the `plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal_security` configuration item is set to `true`, the `event_log:filters` configuration item must contain `INFO_MED` in its list of values for the `IT_MFA` filter, as shown in the preceding example.
WTO announce plug-in

Orbix applications may be configured to write messages to the operator console on starting or shutting down successfully. This can be useful for automated operations software to keep track of these events. The WTO announce plug-in is used to implement this feature.

To enable the loading of the WTO announce plug-in in an Orbix service, such as the CICS server adapter, add the following two configuration items in the iona_services.cicsa scope:

- `initial_references:IT_WTO_Announce:plugin = "wto_announce";`
- `generic_server:wto_announce:enabled = "true";`

Note: For customer-developed Orbix applications (for example, a batch COBOL or PL/I server), the `wto_announce` plug-in should be added to the end of the `orb_plugins` list in that particular application’s ORB configuration. (See “ORB plug-ins list” next for more details.) However, for all Orbix services (by default, within the iona_services configuration scope), it is recommended that you load the `wto_announce` plug-in by specifying the two preceding configuration items rather than by adding the `wto_announce` plug-in to the `orb_plugins` list.

When you load the WTO announce plug-in, a WTO message is issued when the server adapter ORB starts up and shuts down. Messages take the following format:

```
+ORX2001I ORB iona_services.cicsa STARTED (HOSTNAME:<process id>)
+ORX2002I ORB iona_services.cicsa ENDED (HOSTNAME: <process id>)
```

On UNIX System Services, `<process id>` is a PID. On native z/OS, `<process id>` is a job name and an A-xxxx job identifier.

ORB plug-ins list

The related configuration item is `orb_plugins`. It specifies the ORB-level plug-ins that should be loaded in your application at `ORB_init()` time. On z/OS, you can add the WTO announce plug-in support to any customer-developed Orbix application by updating this list in the relevant configuration scope. For example:

```
orb_plugins = ["iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop",
            "local_log_stream", "wto_announce"];
```
In the case of the CICS server adapter's configuration (that is, in the
iona_services.cicsa scope itself) the "wto_announce" plug-in should not be
included in this list, as discussed in "WTO announce plug-in" on page 82.
If RRS support is required, you can add the OTS plug-in to this list. For
example, in the iona_services.cicsa scope:

```
orb_plugins = ["iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop",
  "local_log_stream", "ots"];
```

### POA prefix

The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:poa_prefix`. It specifies
the prefix to be assigned to the POA name used by the CICS server adapter.
The default value is `IT_MFA`. This POA name is embedded in the object key
of the IOR that is published by the server adapter in prepare mode, and
obtained with resolve from the Mapping Gateway interface. The POA name
is not significant in a server that runs in direct persistent mode; however, it
can be useful for the purposes of keeping track of IORs in an environment
where multiple CICS server adapters are being deployed.

### Displaying transaction processing times

The related configuration items are `plugins:cicsa:display_timings` and
`plugins:cicsa:display_timings_in_logfile`. Both items are set to `no` by
default. The difference between these settings is where the data is printed.
`display_timings` sends timing information to SYSPRINT.
`display_timings_in_logfile` sends timing information to the Orbix event
log, which sends messages to SYSOUT by default.
If you set `plugins:cicsa:display_timings` or
`plugins:cicsa:display_timings_in_logfile` to `yes`, the server adapter
produces output similar to the following:

```
2005-05-20 02:07:46: Simple/SimpleObject: call_me: 1: +0 ms, 2: +37ms, 3: +45ms, 4: +51ms
```

Each item of output contains one line. Each line shows the date and time
when the corresponding request was completed, the name of the interface
and operation, and the timestamps at each of the four measurement points
(in milliseconds). All timestamps are relative to the first measurement point.
Therefore, the first measurement point always shows zero milliseconds.
The four measurement points taken are:

1. After the dispatching handler thread gets the request from the server adapter's pending request work queue.
2. Before sending the request to CICS.
3. After receiving the response from CICS.
4. Before sending the response back to the client, using IIOP.

The times measured do not include any time that the request has waited for a server adapter processing thread to become available. If you therefore have five threads in the server adapter, and send six requests at exactly the same moment, the times displayed for the sixth request do not include the time it waited in the server adapter input queue for a thread to become available.

The first measurement point is taken before the data is marshalled from the IIOP request buffer, and is exactly the same point in the source code for each version of the server adapter.

The second and third measurement points are only approximately the same point in the source code for each version of the server adapter CICS transport (EXCI or APPC) plug-ins.

The fourth point is taken after the data has been marshalled back into the IIOP request buffer, but before it is transmitted to the client. It is also exactly the same point in the source code for each version of the server adapter.

No information is displayed for threads with IDs greater than 99. The use of plugins:cicsa:display_timings or plugins:cicsa:display_timings_in_logfile can cause a small decrease in the performance of server adapters, compared to when the server adapters are running without these configuration settings.

---

**Mapping file**

The related configuration item is plugins:cicsa:mapping_file. You can use this to specify either a native z/OS dataset name or a fully qualified pathname to a z/OS UNIX System Services file. The contents of the specified file represent the mappings between IDL operations that the adapter supports and target CICS program names. The mapping file is read by the adapter when it starts. Refer to “The Mapping File” on page 238 for more details.
Type information mechanism

The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:repository_id`. It specifies the repository used by the CICS server adapter to store operation signatures. Two repositories are supported: `ifr` and `type_info store`. The default is `ifr`. Refer to "Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information" on page 254 for more information on the role of type information. You can also set this item to `none`, to indicate that the adapter should only support `cicsraw` and not attempt to read type information from anywhere.

IFR signature cache file

If the CICS server adapter is configured to use the IFR as the type information repository (a store of operation signatures), an IFR signature cache file can be used to improve performance. The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache`. Refer to "Using an IFR Signature Cache file" on page 252 for more information on how IFR signature cache files work.

The filename specification for the signature cache file can take one of several forms:

- The following example reads the mappings from a file in the z/OS UNIX System Services hierarchical file system (HFS):
  
  ```
  plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache = "/home/user/sigcache.txt;"
  ```

- The following example shows the syntax to indicate that the mappings are cached in a flat file (PS) data set, which is created with the default attributes used by the LE runtime:

  ```
  plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache = "//orbixhlq.DEMO.IFRCACHE";
  ```

The data set is created with the default attributes used by the LE runtime. Depending on the number of interfaces and the complexity of the types used, this might not be large enough. In this case, the CICS server adapter saves as many cache entries as possible and then issues error messages. If this occurs, you should preallocate a larger data set with the same attributes, and use this name the next time you start the server adapter.

**Note:** Do not use members of partitioned data sets as a signature cache file.
If the CICS server adapter is configured to use a type_info store as the type information repository (a store of operation signatures), the location of the store must be supplied. The related configuration item is `plugins:cicsa:type_info:source`.

The `plugins:cicsa:type_info:source` variable can be set to one of the following:

- **An HFS file (z/OS UNIX System Services)**
  
  Specifies a file to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from this file during start-up. If a refresh is requested (via `itadmin mfa refresh` for example), this file is re-read. For example:
  ```
  plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "/home/bob/type_info.txt";
  ```

- **An HFS directory (z/OS UNIX System Services)**
  
  Specifies a directory to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from all files in this directory during start-up. If a refresh is requested, all files in the directory are browsed until the relevant operation signature(s) are found. For example:
  ```
  plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "/home/bob/typeinfo_store";
  ```

- **A PDS member (native z/OS)**
  
  Specifies a PDS member (batch) to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from this member during start-up. If a refresh is requested, this member is re-read. For example:
  ```
  plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "/MY1.TYPEINFO(MYINFS)";
  ```

- **A PDS (native z/OS)**
  
  Specifies a dataset to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from all members in this dataset during start-up. If a refresh is requested, all members in the dataset are browsed until the relevant operation signature(s) are found. For example:
  ```
  plugins:cicsa:type_info:source = "/MY1.TYPEINFO";
  ```
For PDS names, you can use a DD name, as long as this is defined to the CICS server adapter start JCL, `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(CICSA)`.

**Note:** The use of HFS directories or a PDS is preferable to the use of flat files, because these methods are better suited to the dynamic addition or removal of interface information, and they can also address IDL versioning.
Configuring the CICS Server Adapter EXCI Plug-In

This chapter describes how to configure the CICS server adapter to use EXCI to communicate with CICS.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| Setting Up EXCI for the CICS Server Adapter | page 90 |
| EXCI Plug-In Configuration Items           | page 94 |
Setting Up EXCI for the CICS Server Adapter

Overview
This section describes the steps to set up EXCI for the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installing Support for IRC for the External Call Interface</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing Sample Orbix CICS Resource Definitions</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updating Access Permissions for CICS Resources</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further reading
Refer to the manual CICS/ESA 4.1 Intercommunication Guide or the equivalent CICS TS manuals for details on installing IRC support in CICS.

Refer to the manual CICS/ESA 4.1 External CICS Interface or the equivalent CICS TS manuals (CICS TS External Interfaces Guide) for details on EXCI used by the Orbix CICS server adapter.

Refer to the section on security in the IBM publication EXCI reference, SC26-8743 for details on security-related questions.
Installing Support for IRC for the External Call Interface

Overview
Support for Inter Region Communication (IRC) must be installed in CICS, and a number of definitions must be made in CICS to support the EXCI mechanism used by Orbix CICS.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Enabling IRC
- Confirmation IRC is activated

Enabling IRC
In general, IRC can be enabled by specifying the CICS parameter IRC=YES or IRCSTRT=YES (depending on the version), and by using the default CICS definitions in the CICS System Definition Data Set (CSD) group DFH$EXCI that are delivered with CICS by default. These definitions are sufficient to get started and they can be used as models for any future requirements you might have.

Confirmation IRC is activated
The following message is issued if this support is active and installed correctly within CICS:

DFHSI1519I CICS The interregion communication session was successfully started.

If this message is not issued, the CICS server adapter cannot use EXCI to communicate with the CICS region.
## Installing Sample Orbix CICS Resource Definitions

**Overview**

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Location of sample JCL to run DFHCSDUP
- Using the sample JCL
- Achieving optimal performance

**Location of sample JCL to run DFHCSDUP**

The `orbix.hlq.JCLLIB(ORBIXCSD)` data set contains a job to run DFHCSDUP, which is the CICS offline resource definition utility, to define the CICS resources used by the sample jobs and demonstrations.

**Using the sample JCL**

You can run the sample `ORBIXCSD` JCL as is, or just use it as a reference when defining the resources online with the CEDA transaction. When the resources have been defined, use CEDA to install the whole group.

**Achieving optimal performance**

To achieve optimal performance, update the value of `RECEIVECOUNT` in the definition of the `ORX1` session to ensure that it matches the maximum number of threads specified for the CICS server adapter via the `thread_pool:high_water_mark` configuration item.
Updating Access Permissions for CICS Resources

Overview
To use the CICS server adapter with a secured CICS region, a number of RACF definitions must be added or changed. Details of the relevant CICS security mechanisms are described in the chapter “Securing the CICS Server Adapter” on page 211. The following are some examples of RACF commands that are needed to establish the necessary permissions.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- Prerequisites
- Running the server adapter in default mode

Prerequisites
Depending on what security options are enabled in your CICS region, or if the region uses SECPRFX=YES, or if you use group instead of member RACF classes, the commands for your region might differ.

Running the server adapter in default mode
When you run the server adapter in default mode, it requires access to the EXCI connection, the CICS region, and the EXCI mirror transaction. If user security is enabled on the EXCI connection (ATTACHSEC IDENTIFY), clients of the server adapter might need access to the EXCI mirror transaction.

The following is an example of the commands for the default mode:

```
RDEFINE FACILITY (DFHAPPL.ORXPIPE1) UACC(NONE)
PERMIT DFHAPPL.ORXPIPE1 CLASS(FACILITY) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(UPDATE)

RDEFINE FACILITY (DFHAPPL.CICS) UACC(NONE)
PERMIT DFHAPPL.CICS CLASS(FACILITY) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)

RDEFINE TCICSTRN ORX1 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT ORX1 CLASS(TCICSTRN) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT ORX1 CLASS(TCICSTRN) ID(client1, client2,...) ACCESS(READ)
```
EXCI Plug-In Configuration Items

In this section

This section provides a detailed description of the EXCI plug-in configuration items. It discusses the following topics:

- **CICS APPLID**
- **CICS connection name**
- **CICS connection type**
- **CICS mirror transaction**
- **CICS COMMAREA length**
- **CICS availability**

CICS APPLID

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:applid`. It specifies the APPLID of the CICS region to which the server adapter is to connect. The CICS server adapter communicates with only one CICS region. If `cics_exci:check_if_cics_available` is set to yes, the specified APPLID is verified when the server adapter starts. This means that the CICS region has to be available when you start the server adapter in prepare mode. The CICS region does not have to be available, however, if `cics_exci:check_if_cics_available` is set to no.

CICS connection name

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name`. It specifies the NETNAME of a CICS-specific EXCI connection for the CICS server adapter to use. By default, the server adapter uses the specific connection that is defined to EXCI for communicating with CICS. You can also use the CICS generic connection. However, because this resource must be shared by all the EXCI programs in your system, there might be times when it is temporarily unavailable to the CICS server adapter. In such cases, the CICS server adapter might not be able to process an incoming client request. Better availability can be achieved by specifying a specific EXCI connection that is dedicated to each server adapter.

CICS connection type

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:pipe_type`. It specifies whether specific or generic EXCI sessions are to be used. Valid values are `SPECIFIC` and `GENERIC`.
### CICS mirror transaction

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:default_tran_id`. It specifies the default CICS mirror transaction ID that is used on the CICS EXCI when the client calls `run_program()` or `run_program_binary()` on the `cicsraw` interface to invoke a CICS program or for a mapped transaction.

### CICS COMMAREA length

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:max_comm_area_length`. It specifies the maximum size, in bytes, of the COMMAREA block (that is, the buffer that is to be available to exchange data with the CICS programs). IDL operations with a large number of arguments, or with large data values for arguments, might be rejected if the CICS server adapter cannot marshal their values into this buffer. When the CICS server adapter uses EXCI, a single COMMAREA is used for the request buffer. The standard EXCI limitation on request size (that is, 32K) therefore applies. The default is 3200 bytes per buffer.

### CICS availability

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_exci:check_if_cics_available`. If this is set to `yes`, CICS must be available before you start the CICS server adapter in EXCI mode. The default is `no`, to allow the CICS server adapter to start even if CICS is not available.
Configuring the CICS Server Adapter APPC Plug-In

The APPC plug-in for the CICS Server Adapter uses APPC to pass data into and out of a CICS region. Using this plug-in therefore enables you to avoid the 32K limit imposed by the EXCI plug-in. This chapter describes how to configure the CICS server adapter to use APPC to communicate with CICS.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| Setting Up APPC for the CICS Server Adapter | page 98 |
| Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC | page 105 |
| APPC Plug-In Configuration Items | page 110 |
Setting Up APPC for the CICS Server Adapter

Prerequisites to using APPC
Before you can run an Orbix CICS application in your CICS region, you must perform a number of additional steps to enable the required APPC functionality on your z/OS system. Depending on your installation, one or all of these tasks might already have been completed.

Further reading
For more information on setting up APPC/MVS, refer to the IBM publication MVS Planning: APPC/MVS Management, GC28-107.
Additionally, you can find specific information about defining APPC links in CICS in the chapter on "Defining APPC Links" in the IBM publication CICS Intercommunication Guide, SC33-1695.

In this section
This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Defining LUs to APPC</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining an APPC Destination Name for the CICS LU</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining LUs to VTAM</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining LUs to APPC

Overview
An LU (Logical Unit) name identifies each side of an APPC conversation. It is defined to `APPC/MVS` in the `APPCxxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB`. You must define at least one LU name to use the CICS server adapter. If you want to run multiple server adapters you might want to set up separate LUs for each one.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Specifying the LU name
- Specifying the VSAM dataset name
- Location of sample JCL to create a VSAM dataset name
- RACF APPCLU profile name requirement

Specifying the LU name
The LU name to be used by the server adapter is only used for outbound communication. It can therefore be specified as follows:

```
LUADD ACBNAME(ORXLU02) NOSCHED
```

Specifying the VSAM dataset name
The only other requirement in `SYS1.PARMLIB(APPCPMxx)` is the specification of the name of the VSAM data set where APPC-side information can be found. This data set is used to define APPC destination names. For example:

```
SIDEINFO DATASET(SYS1.APPCSI)
```

Location of sample JCL to create a VSAM dataset name
If your installation does not already have one, see `SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBSIVSM)` for sample JCL to create a VSAM dataset name.

RACF APPCLU profile name requirement
If you define a new LU for the server adapter’s use (for example, `ORXLU02`), that name must be used for the RACF `APPCLU` profile name. You can use the `plugins:cics_appc:appc_outbound_lu_name` configuration item to define a new LU.
Defining an APPC Destination Name for the CICS LU

Overview

The CICS server adapter connects to a CICS region through an APPC destination name rather than directly through the CICS LU name. This destination name is used to establish various default characteristics for the APPC conversation being initiated; including the name of the partner LU, the transaction program name, and a logon mode name.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Storage of the APPC destination name
- Example of the APPC-side information JCL
- Explanation of example JCL

Storage of the APPC destination name

All this information is stored in the APPC-side information data set. This data set is updated using the `ATBSDFMU` APPC/MVS utility program.

Example of the APPC-side information JCL

The following is an example of JCL to load an entry into the APPC-side information data set.

Example 3: Example of APPC-Side Information JCL

```plaintext
//SIADDEXEC PGM=ATBSDFMU
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=* 
//SYSSDLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APPCSI,DISP=SHR 
//SYSSDOUT DD SYSOUT=* 
//SYSIN DD DATA 
SIADD
  1 DESTNAME(ORBXCICS)
  2 TPNAME(CICS)
  3 MODENAME(APPCHOST)
  4 PARTNER_LU(CICSTS1)
/*
```
Explanation of example JCL

The example APPC-side information JCL can be explained as follows:

1. For the purposes of the CICS server adapter, **DESTNAME** names the string that is to be passed to the server adapter when it starts up. The associated configuration item is plugins:cics_appc:cics_destination_name.

2. The **TPNAME** specification names a CICS transaction to run. However, the server adapter overrides this for each conversation. Therefore, its value here is not important.

3. The **MODENAME** parameter names an entry in the VTAM logon mode table. This specifies other characteristics that are to be used in the conversation. See the **SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBLMODE)** data set for a definition of the **APPCHOST** logon mode, and the **SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBLJOB)** data set for the JCL to install it.

4. **PARTNER_LU** must specify the **APPLID** of the CICS region to which you want to connect.
Defining LUs to VTAM

Overview

APPC/MVS expects its LUs to be defined as VTAM resources, so that they can access a SNA network. This subsection discusses the following topics:

- VTAM requirements for LUs
- Using SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL)

VTAM requirements for LUs

Although the CICS server adapter is only intended to run on the same system as the CICS region it communicates with (that is, an LU=LOCAL conversation), VTAM application program definition (APPL) macros must still be coded for each LU. See SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL) for a sample APPL definition of an APPC LU.

Using SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL)

The following definitions for the CICS server adapter LU use the SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL) definition, with some changes (which are highlighted):

Example 4: Example of APPL Definitions for CICS and CICS Server Adapter LUs

| ORXLU02 APPL | ACBINAME=ORXLU02, | C |
| 1 | APPC=YES, | C |
| 2 | SECACPT=CONV, | C |
| 3 | VERIFY=OPTIONAL, | C |
|  | AUTOSES=0, | C |
|  | DDRAINL=NALLOW, | C |
|  | DLOGMOD=APPCHOST, | C |
|  | DMINWNL=5, | C |
|  | DMINWNR=5, | C |
|  | DRESPL=NALLOW, | C |
|  | DSSSLIM=10, | C |
|  | LMDENT=19, | C |
|  | MODETAB=LOGMODES, | C |
|  | PARSESS=YES, | C |
|  | SRBEXIT=YES, | C |
|  | VPACING=1 | C |
1. Both the ACBNAME= parameter and the APPL statement label should match the LU name defined to APPC. This LU must be supplied to the APPC-based CICS server adapter via the plugins:cics_appc:appc_outbound_lu_name configuration item.

2. SECACPT= and VERIFY=, in conjunction with some CICS start-up options, specify what authentication and access checks are made when initiating conversations between the LU and CICS. SECACPT=CONV indicates that a partner LU must provide user and password information to authenticate itself before being allowed access to resources on the local system. This protects your CICS region from unauthorized access by users on other systems in your SNA network.

3. VERIFY=OPTIONAL indicates that the password requirement can be bypassed if LU-LU session-level verification can be performed. This allows the server adapter to get access (via the session keys in the APPCLU profiles described in "Session key" on page 107) to the CICS region without having to know the passwords of all its clients.

Security considerations

If there is no possibility of unauthorized access from other systems in your SNA network, you might prefer to code SECACPT=ALREADYV and VERIFY=NONE, indicating that partner LUs do not need to be authenticated. This is safe for LU=LOCAL conversations, because user information is provided directly by APPC/MVS, with no opportunity for the programmer of the partner LU to fabricate his identity.

Refer to "Securing the CICS Server Adapter" on page 211 for more details about APPC conversation security and session-level verification.
## Defining the Required Resources to CICS

### Overview
This subsection provides the location of the JCL used to define required APPC resources to CICS. It also provides information about prerequisites to using this JCL.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- Location of required JCL
- Prerequisites

### Location of required JCL
The `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(ORBIXCSD)` JCL member runs the CICS offline resource definition utility to define the required APPC resources to CICS.

### Prerequisites
You might need to change the `STEPLIB` and `DFHCSD` DD cards to match your CICS installation.
Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC

Overview
There are a number of RACF definitions related to APPC that you might need to add or change to run the CICS server adapter. Refer to “Securing the CICS Server Adapter” on page 211 for more details about how the server adapter fits into a secure system environment.

Much of the information provided in this section can be found in the chapter on “Implementing LU 6.2 Security” in the IBM publication CICS RACF Security Guide, SC33-1701 CICS RACF Security Guide.

In this section
This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bind Time Security with APPC</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting LUs</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Security &amp; User Security with APPC</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bind Time Security with APPC

Overview
When a request to establish an APPC session is received from or sent to a remote system (that is, when the session is bound), a security check can be applied. This is called bind-time security and its purpose is to prevent an unauthorized system from binding a session to one of your CICS systems.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

• Specifying session security at both ends of a connection
• Bind request prerequisites
• Implementing bind-time security
• APPCLU profile name
• Session key
• User IDs and APPCLU profiles

Specifying session security at both ends of a connection
When you define an LU 6.2 connection to a remote system, you assume that all inbound bind requests originate in that remote system, and that all outbound bind requests are routed to the same system. However, where there is a possibility that a transmission line might be switched or broken into, you can guard against unauthorized session binds by specifying session security at both ends of the connection.

Bind request prerequisites
For a bind request to succeed, both ends must hold the same session key, which is defined to RACF in an APPCLU definition.

Implementing bind-time security
To implement bind-time security for your APPC connection, you need to:

• Specify sec=YES and XAPPC=YES in your system initialization table (SIT) and recycle CICS to effect the change.
• Change the BINDSECURITY option to YES on the CONNECTION resource definition in the CSD.
• Define APPCLU RACF definitions with shared session keys as outlined below.
APPCLU profile name

Each APPCLU profile name has the form:

'networkid.local-lu-name.partner-lu-name'

and contains information to be used by APPC/MVS on one side of a conversation between the two named LUs. This means each side of a conversation has its own specific profile. For example, if LU ORXLU02 initiates a conversation with the CICS region whose APPLID is CICSTS1, APPC/MVS on the initiating (outbound) side examines the following profile:

'networkid.ORXLU02.CICSTS1'

and APPC/MVS on the receiving (inbound) side examines this profile:

'networkid.CICSTS1.ORXLU02'

Session key

Each profile includes a session key, which is a string of letters or numbers, and a CONVSEC setting. When a conversation is initiated between these two LUs, APPC/MVS on the outbound side passes the session key found in its profile to APPC/MVS on the inbound side. If APPC/MVS on the inbound side finds that the received session key matches the session key in its own profile, it overrides the VTAM SECACPT= setting with the CONVSEC setting from its profile. In summary, for a bind request to succeed, both ends must hold the same session key, which is defined to RACF as follows:

```
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.ORXLU02.CICSTS1
   UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.CICSTS1.ORXLU02
   UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCLU)
```

User IDs and APPCLU profiles

It is not necessary to permit the server adapter or CICS region to have user IDs for the APPCLU profiles. However, access to the profiles should be tightly controlled to ensure that only appropriate users can read or change the session keys.
Protecting LUs

Overview
This subsection discusses the following topics:
- User access to LU names
- Creating RACF APPCPORT profiles

User access to LU names
If you have set up the APPCLU profiles that allow a conversation between two specific LU names to bypass password checking, you should limit the users that can initiate or received conversations using those LU names.

Creating RACF APPCPORT profiles
You can do this by creating RACF APPCPORT profiles for each LU name and by permitting only certain users access to those profiles. For example:

```
RDEFINE APPCPORT ORXLU02 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT ORXLU02 CLASS(APPCPORT) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCPORT) RACLIST(APPCPORT)
```

By having an ORXLU02 profile, you are restricting the users that can take advantage of the session-level verification provided by the APPCLU profiles.
## Link Security & User Security with APPC

### Overview

Link security and user security further restricts the resources a user can access, depending on the remote system from which they are accessed. This subsection discusses the following topics:

- A bound APPC session
- Specifying ATTACHSEC=

### A bound APPC session

When an APPC session is bound, each side tells the other the level of attach-security user verification that is be performed on its incoming requests. The ATTACHSEC operand on the CONNECTION resource definition in the CSD specifies the sign-on requirements for incoming transaction-attach requests.

### Specifying ATTACHSEC=

If you specify ATTACHSEC=LOCAL, no user ID is supplied by the remote system. However, if you specify ATTACHSEC=IDENTIFY, a user ID is expected on every attach request. Depending on how you want to protect your CICS resources, you might want to change this option. Refer to the CICS RACF Security Guide for more information.
# APPC Plug-In Configuration Items

## Overview

This section discusses the following topics:

- CICS APPC destination LU name
- Server adapter outbound LU name
- APPC/CICS transaction request timeout
- Data segment length

## CICS APPC destination LU name

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_appc:cics_destination_name`. This specifies a symbolic name that identifies the APPC LU name for the CICS region that the CICS server adapter connects to. All incoming client requests are forwarded into the specific CICS region that is associated with this destination name. The default value is `ORBXCICS`.

The specified APPC destination name is verified only when the server adapter first attempts to issue a request to the specified CICS region. This means that the CICS region does not have to be available when you start the APPC-based server adapter.

## Server adapter outbound LU name

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_appc:appc_outbound_lu_name`. This specifies the APPC LU name that the server adapter uses to initiate communication with CICS. This is useful when security considerations prohibit APPC connections between the system base LU and CICS. Refer to “APPC-Based Security Considerations” on page 229 for more details. Refer to “Defining LUs to APPC” on page 99 for an example where the LU name is created as `ORXLU02`.

## APPC/CICS transaction request timeout

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_appc:timeout`. It specifies the number of minutes that the CICS server adapter waits for a response from CICS before cancelling the request. It prevents the server adapter from having to wait indefinitely for a response from CICS if the transaction has stopped for some reason. The default is no timeout.
Data segment length

The related configuration item is `plugins:cics_appc:segment_length`. The CICS server adapter builds up APPC segments of this size. For APPC, multiple buffers of up to this specified length are used to transmit the data. The 32K limit for APPC for a single buffer therefore applies, but all the buffers together can be more than 32K. The default is 32767 bytes per buffer.
Configuring the CICS Server Adapter RRS Plug-In

The RRS plug-in provides integration facilities between the CORBA OTS service in the CICS server adapter and the commit/rollback processing of CICS. This chapter provides an introduction to RRS functionality, shows you how to set up RRS for the CICS server adapter, and provides details of the RRS plug-in configuration items.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction to RRS</th>
<th>page 114</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setting up RRS for the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>page 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRS Plug-In Configuration Items</td>
<td>page 122</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction to RRS

RRS plug-in functionality

This plug-in can only be used in conjunction with the EXCI transport plug-in. Also, RRS support is only available when using CICS TS 1.3 or higher. The RRS plug-in only becomes involved in the request if the client sends the request with a transaction context. The server adapter therefore supports both transactional and non-transactional requests when the RRS plug-in is enabled. The transactional performance overheads only affect transactional requests. With RRS support, the server adapter only commits or rolls back transactions in CICS when the client program issues the commit or rollback call for a transactional request.

This section discusses the following topics:

• IORs and transaction support
• Further reading

IORs and transaction support

IORs for IDL interfaces that support transactional processing have an extra component to indicate to the client that transactional support is available in the server (the server adapter in this case). Ensure that you obtain new IORs from the CICS server adapter using prepare and resolve, and so on, after you have enabled the RRS plug-in. This is because transactional communication between the client program and the server adapter only works with these new IORs with the transaction support component.

Further reading

For further information, refer to the IBM publication OS/390 MVS Setting up a Sysplex, GC28-1779.

Further information about System Logger is available in the IBM publication OS/390 MVS Setting up a Sysplex, GC28-1779.
Setting up RRS for the CICS Server Adapter

Overview

This section describes what you need to do to use the RRS plug-in with the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- IPL your z/OS system in Sysplex mode
- Defining the required log streams
- Managing log streams
- Starting RRS
- Stopping RRS
- Restarting CICS when RRS is available on the system

IPL your z/OS system in Sysplex mode

RRS requires the use of a sysplex couple data set, which means that your z/OS system must be configured as part of a single-system or multi-system sysplex.

The following steps are required:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Change the <code>PLEXCFG</code> parameter in <code>SYS1.PARMLIB(IEASYSYSxx)</code> to <code>PLEXCFG-MONOPLEX</code> for a single-system sysplex or <code>PLEXCFG-MULTISYSTEM</code> for a multi-system sysplex. <code>PLEXCFG-ANY</code> is also valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Specify <code>COUPLExx</code> in <code>SYS1.PARMLIB(IEASYSYSxx)</code> to identify the <code>COUPLExx</code> parmlib member that describes the sysplex environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining the required log streams

There are two types of log streams:

- Coupling facility log streams.
- DASD-only log streams.

The main difference between the two types of log streams is the storage medium used to hold interim log data. In a coupling facility log stream, interim storage for log data is contained in coupling facility list structures. In
a DASD-only log stream, interim storage for log data is contained in local storage buffers on the system. For the purposes of this demonstration, DASD-only log streams are used.

Prerequisites to running the log streams

RRS requires five log streams to be defined to System Logger. The IBM publication OS/390 MVS Programming: Resource Recovery, GC28-1739 lists the following initial and recommended sizes for the log streams:

Table 1: Initial and Maximum Log Stream Sizes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log Stream</th>
<th>Initial Size</th>
<th>Maximum Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RM.Data</td>
<td>1 MB</td>
<td>1 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAIN.UR</td>
<td>5 MB</td>
<td>50 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELAYED.UR</td>
<td>5 MB</td>
<td>50 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART</td>
<td>1 MB</td>
<td>5 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARCHIVE</td>
<td>5 MB</td>
<td>50 MB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The initial sizes listed should be sufficient to run the demonstration, but the log streams should be set up with the maximum sizes, if possible, to facilitate future use of RRS on the system. This is because production-level applications require the maximum sizes listed. Also, the ARCHIVE stream is not required, but setting it up could help to trace any problems with RRS later on.
Log streams are managed based on the policy information that is placed in the LOGR couple data set. To do this perform the following steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Create and format the LOGR couple data set. The following JCL can be used:  
//STEP1     EXEC  PGM=IXCL1DSU  
//STEPLIB   DD   DSN=SYS1.MIGLIB,DISP=SHR  
//SYSPRINT  DD    SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN     DD    *  
DEFINEDS SYSPLEX(IONAPLEX)  
   DSN(SYS1.SLC.FDSS1) VOLSER(S27VL1)  
   DATA TYPE(LOGR)  
      ITEM NAME(LSR) NUMBER(100)  
      ITEM NAME(LSTRR) NUMBER(50)  
      ITEM NAME(DSEXTENT) NUMBER(20)  
DEFINEDS SYSPLEX(IONAPLEX)  
   DSN(SYS1.SLC.FDSS2) VOLSER(S27VL2)  
   DATA TYPE(LOGR)  
      ITEM NAME(LSR) NUMBER(100)  
      ITEM NAME(LSTRR) NUMBER(50)  
      ITEM NAME(DSEXTENT) NUMBER(20)  
/|
| 2    | Update the SYS1.PARMLIB(COUPLExx) member to include the LOGR data sets you have just defined. For example:  
DATA  
   TYPE(LOGR)  
   PCOUPLE(SYS1.SLC.FDSS1)  
   ACOUPLE(SYS1.SLC.FDSS2)  
/|
### Setting up RRS for the CICS Server Adapter

3. Make the LOGR couple data sets available. You can use either of the following ways to make the LOGR datasets available to the system:
   - IPL the system to activate the newly defined specifications in the COUPLxx member.
   - Issue the following `SETXCF` operator commands to bring the LOGR data sets online without an IPL:

   ```
   SETXCF COUPLE,TYPE=LOGR,PCOUPLE=(SYS1.SLC.FDSS1)
   SETXCF COUPLE,TYPE=LOGR,ACOUPLE=(SYS1.SLC.FDSS2)
   ```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 3    | Make the LOGR couple data sets available. You can use either of the following ways to make the LOGR datasets available to the system:  
   - IPL the system to activate the newly defined specifications in the COUPLxx member.  
   - Issue the following `SETXCF` operator commands to bring the LOGR data sets online without an IPL:  
     ```
     SETXCF COUPLE,TYPE=LOGR,PCOUPLE=(SYS1.SLC.FDSS1)
     SETXCF COUPLE,TYPE=LOGR,ACOUPLE=(SYS1.SLC.FDSS2)
     ``` |
4 Define the log streams using the **IXCMIAPU** utility provided in SYS1.MIGLIB. The following JCL can be used:

```jcl
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IXCMIAPU
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SYS1.MIGLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN DD SYSOUT=*  
 DATA TYPE(LOGR) REPORT(YES)
 DEFINE LOGSTREAM 
 NAME(ATR.IONAPLEX.ARCHIVE) 
 HLQ(IXGLOGR) MODEL(NO) LS_SIZE(1024) 
 LOWOFFLOAD(0) HIGHOFFLOAD(80) 
 RETPD(15) AUTODELETE(YES) 
 DASONLY(YES)

 DEFINE LOGSTREAM 
 NAME(ATR.IONAPLEX.RM.DATA) 
 HLQ(IXGLOGR) MODEL(NO) LS_SIZE(1024) 
 LOWOFFLOAD(0) HIGHOFFLOAD(80) 
 RETPD(15) AUTODELETE(YES) 
 DASONLY(YES)

 DEFINE LOGSTREAM 
 NAME(ATR.IONAPLEX.MAIN.UR) 
 HLQ(IXGLOGR) MODEL(NO) LS_SIZE(1024) 
 LOWOFFLOAD(0) HIGHOFFLOAD(80) 
 RETPD(15) AUTODELETE(YES) 
 DASONLY(YES)

 DEFINE LOGSTREAM 
 NAME(ATR.IONAPLEX.DELAYED.UR) 
 HLQ(IXGLOGR) MODEL(NO) LS_SIZE(1024) 
 LOWOFFLOAD(0) HIGHOFFLOAD(80) 
 RETPD(15) AUTODELETE(YES) 
 DASONLY(YES)

 DEFINE LOGSTREAM 
 NAME(ATR.IONAPLEX.RESTART) 
 HLQ(IXGLOGR) MODEL(NO) LS_SIZE(1024) 
 LOWOFFLOAD(0) HIGHOFFLOAD(80) 
 RETPD(15) AUTODELETE(YES) 
 DASONLY(YES)

/*
```
Perform the following steps to start RRS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Update the IEFSSNxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB to add RRS as a z/OS subsystem as follows:  

```
SUBSYS SUBNAME(RRS)
```

An IPL is required to activate this change. Dynamic subsystem definition is not supported by RRS, so you cannot use the `SETSSI ADD,SUBNAME=RRS` command to define RRS. |
| 2    | Copy SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATRRRS) to SYS1.PROCLIB(RRS) |
| 3    | Start RRS by issuing the following operator command:  

```
S RRS
```

To stop RRS, issue the following command:

```
SETRRS CANCEL
```

Add `RRMS=YES` to the CICS SIT table. Restart the CICS region. The following message must appear in the CICS region output to indicate that CICS has attached to RRS:

```
The Resource Recovery Services (RRS) exit manager ATR.EXITMGR.IBM is now available.
```
### RRS Plug-In Configuration Items

#### Overview

This section discusses the following topics:
- Server adapter resource manager name
- Initial reference name for RRS plug-in

#### Server adapter resource manager name

The related configuration item is `plugins:rrs:rm-name`. It specifies the resource manager name that the CICS server adapter uses to register with RRS. The server adapter registers with RRS as a communications resource manager, because it only forwards transactional requests and does not itself manage incoming data on a transactional basis (that is, it supports only communication and is not a database). Each server adapter should have its own resource manager name that it uses to register with RRS. The resource manager name should also be in a dot-separated format; for example, as follows: `TEST.CICSADAP1.IONA.UA`

According to the rules of RRS on the naming of resource managers, the resource manager name for the server adapter must be suffixed with `.UA`. This indicates to RRS that the server adapter might run without APF authorization and that it does not use any of the RRS services that require APF authorization. The second last item in the name should be the company name that provides this resource manager. Depending on the naming schemes in your company, this should either be IONA or the name of your company. Using IONA is usually the best option, to ensure that the resource manager names do not conflict with resource managers provided by other companies. The rest of the name should be specified in such a way that it is unique for each server adapter.

The presence of this configuration item instructs the server adapter to attempt to load RRS.

#### Initial reference name for RRS plug-in

The related configuration item is `initial_references:IT_RRS:plugin`. It specifies that the RRS plug-in should be used for RRS services in the server adapter. This should always be set to `rrs` and is a required item if RRS is used.
Configuring the CICS Server Adapter for Client Principals

The CICS server adapter can be configured to read the client principal from incoming GIOP 1.0 and 1.1 requests. It can also be configured to read the principal from a service context for GIOP 1.2. If the server adapter reads the principal from the GIOP request, it passes it into CICS for mapped requests. The server adapter can also run the transaction in CICS under the user principal obtained from the client. This chapter explains how to configure the server adapter to use client principals.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| Activating Client Principal Support | page 125 |
| Setting up the Required Privileges  | page 129 |
Additional Requirements for CICS Protocol Plug-Ins page 131

**Note:** See “Securing and Using the CICS Server Adapter” on page 209 for more details about the use of client principals when running the server adapter in secure mode.
## Activating Client Principal Support

### Overview
For IDL mapped requests, the server adapter marshals the principal data into CICS, making it available to the Orbix server inside CICS. The server adapter can also be configured to run the transaction in CICS under this client's user ID for both `cicsraw` requests and mapped requests.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Using CORBA::Principal
- Configuring the cicsa plug-in

### Using CORBA::Principal
CORBA::Principal has been deprecated by the OMG in GIOP 1.2 and higher. Hence the principal can only be made available to the server adapter via GIOP 1.0 or 1.1 client requests. However, GIOP 1.2 can still be used. In this case, the client must pass the principal string in a service context and the server adapter must be configured to read the principal from this service context.

### Configuring the cicsa plug-in
To configure `client_principal` support, the following items within the server adapter's configuration scope must be reviewed.
### Table 2:  Client Principal Support and cicsa Plug-In Configuration Items
(Sheet 1 of 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal</code></td>
<td>When this item is set to <code>true</code>, the principal is be obtained from GIOP, truncated to eight characters and converted to uppercase. The CICS server adapter then also runs the transaction under the user ID. If no principal is available or it is invalid, the transaction fails. Setting this item to <code>true</code>, therefore, instructs the CICS server adapter to use z/OS services, to assume the identity of the client when communicating with CICS. This results in CICS and either APPC or EXCI making their security checks against that user ID. If this option is not specified, the security checks are made against the user ID of the server adapter itself. The use of this option requires that the server adapter has special privileges set up. See “Securing the CICS Server Adapter” on page 211 for more details about using this configuration item. When this item is set to <code>false</code>, the transaction runs under the server adapter's user ID. When this item is set to <code>true</code> or <code>false</code>, the principal is still obtained from GIOP and passed as is (apart from being converted from ASCII to EBCDIC) to the transaction inside CICS, if <code>cicsraw</code> is not being used. If the client principal is not available from GIOP, it is not passed as part of the request to CICS, but the transaction is still executed. The default is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal_user_security</code></td>
<td>This is used only with CICS EXCI. When this item is set to <code>true</code>, the CICS server adapter is to provide the client principal user ID rather than its own user ID on the request to start the target CICS program. The default is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2:  Client Principal Support and cicsa Plug-In Configuration Items  
(Sheet 2 of 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>plugins:cicsa:use_client_password</code></td>
<td>When this item is set to <code>yes</code>, it indicates that the CICS server adapter should use a client password when it wants to switch the thread that is making the request to CICS to the user ID passed in the client principal, instead of using <code>SURROGAT</code> rights. The format of the principal sent by the client application must then take the form <code>userid;password</code> (that is, user ID and password separated by a colon) instead of the normal <code>userid</code> format. When using this option, there is a risk that the password might be displayed in the CICS server adapter output or that the password might be obtained from the IIOP message on the network if TLS is not used. You should therefore consider these security implications before using this configuration item to send passwords from the client. The default is <code>no</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>policies:iiop:server_version_policy</code></td>
<td>If this is set to <code>1.1</code>, the server adapter publishes a version 1.1 IOR which instructs clients to communicate over GIOP 1.1. In this case, the principal is transmitted in the <code>CORBA::Principal</code> field. If this is set to <code>1.2</code> (the default), 1.2 is used as the default GIOP version. In this case, the principal must be transmitted in the request message using an alternative mechanism (that is, a service context). Note: Orbix does not support publishing 1.0 version IORs. Therefore, this configuration item must be set to <code>1.1</code> or <code>1.2</code>. Note: Even if this configuration item is set to <code>1.2</code>, clients may still choose to communicate using a lower GIOP version, if the client ORB is capable of parsing a 1.2 IOR. For example, Orbix clients can use the <code>policies:iiop:client_version_policy</code> configuration item to communicate with the server adapter over GIOP 1.0 or 1.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>policies:giop:interop_policy:enable_principal_service_context</code></td>
<td>For GIOP 1.2, if this item is set to <code>true</code>, it instructs the CICS server adapter to look for the principal string in a service context. The default value is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This item specifies the service context ID from which the CICS server adapter attempts to read the principal string if policies:giop:interop_policy:enable_principal_service_context is set to true. The default service context ID where the server adapter looks for the principal string is 0x49545F44.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>policies:giop:interop_policy:principal_service_context_id</td>
<td>This item specifies the service context ID from which the CICS server adapter attempts to read the principal string if policies:giop:interop_policy:enable_principal_service_context is set to true. The default service context ID where the server adapter looks for the principal string is 0x49545F44.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting up the Required Privileges

Overview

If the CICS server adapter is to be run using the `use_client_principal` configuration item in the APPC or EXCI plug-ins, the user ID under which the server adapter runs might need to be granted special privileges to enable thread-level security environments. The requirements vary, depending on whether the `FACILITY RACF class profile BPX.SERVER` is defined on your system.

This section discusses the following topics:
- **Requirements when BPX.SERVER is defined**
- **Requirements when BPX.SERVER is not defined**
- **Impersonating users**

Requirements when BPX.SERVER is defined

If `BPX.SERVER` is defined, the user ID does not need to have a `UID` of 0, but it must have `READ` access to the `BPX.SERVER` profile. In addition, the server adapter executable must reside in a z/OS load library that is PADS-defined. (PADS is the acronym for Program Access to Data Sets.)

Requirements when BPX.SERVER is not defined

If `BPX.SERVER` is not defined, this user ID must have a `UID` of 0 assigned to it in the `OMVS` segment of its RACF user profile.

Impersonating users

Additionally, because the CICS server adapter is processing requests for users without having their passwords, you must activate the `SURROGAT RACF class` and define profiles in it that allow the server adapter's user ID to impersonate particular users. You can do this by establishing a profile for each potential client user. For example:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT BPX.SRV.client1 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT BPX.SRV.client1 CLASS(SURROGAT) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)
RDEFINE SURROGAT BPX.SRV.client2 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT BPX.SRV.client2 CLASS(SURROGAT) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)
```
Alternatively, you might want to use a generic profile that allows the CICS server adapter to impersonate any client user. For example:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT BPX.SRV.* UACC(NONE)
PERMIT BPX.SRV.* CLASS(SURROGAT) ID(Adapter) ACCESS(READ)
```

Access to such profiles should be very tightly controlled.
Additional Requirements for CICS Protocol Plug-Ins

Overview
When running authorized and using the `use_client_principal` configuration item in the APPC or EXCI plug-in, the CICS server adapter changes the ID of the thread processing the request to that of the client principal. It then makes the request under the new ID; so, in this case, the request should start the CICS transaction with an ACEE for the client ID.

This section discusses the following topics:
- Switching threads
- Making the CICS server adapter program-controlled
- Further Reading

Switching threads
The CICS server adapter uses the `pthread_security_np()` call on the thread that is processing the client request, to switch that thread to run under the requested user ID (client principal). For EXCI, it then issues the EXCI call, providing this ID in the request. For APPC, it issues the APPC calls now that the thread is running under this user ID. For this to work, an EXCI or APPC server adapter must be program-controlled.
To make the CICS server adapter program-controlled, you need to consider the following issues:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>If the CICS server adapter user ID does not have READ access to the <code>BPX.SERVER</code> RACF resource, in the <code>FACILITY</code> class, you get the <code>EPERM</code> errors when the server adapter is trying to switch identities on the thread. The server adapter user ID also needs access to the <code>BPX.SRV.userid</code> resource in the RACF <code>SURROGAT</code> class where <code>userid</code> is the client principal in question. If the user ID under which the server adapter runs is well controlled, you could possibly give it read access to the <code>BPX.SRV.*</code> resource, to enable the server adapter to handle requests from any client principal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>When deploying in UNIX System Services, the CICS server adapter must run in its own address space. You must ensure that the <code>_BPX_SHAREAS</code> variable is not set in the server adapter's environment. The <code>itcicsa</code> shell script supplied by Orbix Mainframe handles this, by unsetting this variable before running the server adapter program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3    | When deploying in UNIX System Services, you must ensure that any UNIX System Services files that are involved in running the server adapter have the appropriate extended attributes set. Your systems programmer might execute the `extattr` command, as follows, to make these files program-controlled:  
  ```bash
  $ cd $IT_PRODUCT_DIR
  $ extattr +p shlib/* asp/Version/bin/itcicsa
  ```  
  The command `ls -E` can be used to display the extended file attributes in the UNIX System Services shell.  
  **Note:** If, at this point, the address space is still not program-controlled, the server adapter throws an exception back to the client and logs an error message to indicate that it could not switch to that user ID, and that it is therefore not going to attempt to start the transaction in CICS. |
Further Reading

Refer to the IBM publication *Planning: OpenEdition MVS, SC23-3015* for more information on enabling thread-level security for servers.
Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS

This chapter provides information on configuring the Orbix runtime that is used by Orbix servers running in CICS.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customizing CICS</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Orbix Event Logging</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing CICS

Overview

Before you can run Orbix CICS applications in your region, you must perform a number of additional steps to enable your CICS system to support Orbix servers. Depending on your installation, one or all of these tasks might already have been completed. You must verify this with the systems programmer responsible for CICS at your site.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Installing language environment support
- Installing support for C++ classes in CICS
- Installing sample Orbix CICS resource definitions
- Updating the CICS region

Installing language environment support

CICS Language Environment (LE) support is not installed as standard. To enable LE support in CICS you must perform a number of steps. Refer to the IBM manual Language Environment for OS/390 Customization for details on installing LE support in CICS.

If LE support has been successfully installed in CICS, the following message is written to the console:

DFHAP1203I CICS Language Environment is being initialized

If you cannot see this message, LE support is not available under CICS and any Orbix activities fail.

Installing support for C++ classes in CICS

Support for the C++ standard classes must be explicitly defined to CICS. Refer to the IBM manual OS/390 C/C++ Programming Guide for details of the steps required to run C++ application programs under CICS. In particular, note that the standard C++ DLLs such as IOSTREAM must be defined to CICS.

Failure to do this results in the following messages being issued from CICS when attempting to run an Orbix CICS transaction:

EDC6063I DLL name is IOSTREAM
EDC5207S Load request for DLL load module unsuccessful.
C++ support is required by Orbix itself, which is written in C++.

**Note:** From the Orbix CICS programming perspective, servers can only be written in COBOL or PL/I at this time.

### Installing sample Orbix CICS resource definitions

The data set *orbixhlq.JCLLIB(ORBIXCSD)* contains a job to run **DFHCSDUP**, which is the CICS offline resource definition utility, to define the CICS resources used by the sample jobs and demonstrations. You can run this as is, or just use it as a reference when defining the resources online with the CEDA transaction. When the resources have been defined, use CEDA to install the whole group.

### Updating the CICS region

To update the CICS region perform the following steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Add five libraries to the CICS region's **DFHRPL** concatenation as follows:  
      DD DSN=orbixhlq.DEMO.CICS.CBL.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
      DD DSN=orbixhlq.DEMO.CICS.PLI.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
      DD DSN=orbixhlq.MFA.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
      DD DSN=CEE.SCEERUN,DISP=SHR  
      DD DSN=CBC.SCLBDLL,DISP=SHR |
| 2    | Add **CEE.SCEERUN** to the **STEPLIB** concatenation. |
| 3    | Recycle the regions to pick up these libraries. |
Customizing Orbix Event Logging

Overview

For the Orbix runtime in CICS, most of the configuration settings are fixed. However, the level of event logging performed by the runtime can be customized for the server adapter.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Customizing the level of event logging
- Event logging settings
- ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting

Customizing the level of event logging

This is done by modifying the ORXMFACx DLL. This DLL contains an S390 Assembler CSECT that supplies the event logging string to the runtime.

Event logging settings

The event logging settings are as follows:

Table 3: Event Logging Settings for the CICS Server Adapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>LOG_NONE— no logging in CICS is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>LOG_ERROR— only log errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>LOG_WARNING— log warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_HIGH— log high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_MED— log medium priority informational messages, high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_LOW— log low priority informational messages, medium priority informational messages, high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_ALL— log all messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing Orbix Event Logging

**ORXMFACx DLL setting**

The ORXMFACx DLL shipped with the CICS server adapter has a setting of 2 for event logging in CICS.

This can be modified to some other setting. For example, to help trace a problem with a transaction in CICS, it can be changed to 6.

**Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting**

This is done using the MFACLKJ JCL member supplied in orbixhlq.JCLLIB. In this JCL, the LOGLEVEL variable can be modified to contain the new event logging value. It can then be run to create a new version of the ORXMFACx DLL with this new value. Ensure that you make a backup copy of ORXMFACx, before running this JCL member. After this re-link of the DLL, make it available to the CICS region in which you are testing, for the new setting to come into effect. After the testing is complete, consider copying back the original DLL, to revert to the normal logging levels.
CHAPTER 10

IDL Compiler Configuration

This chapter describes Orbix IDL compiler settings for the mfa plug-in, which is used to generate CICS server adapter mapping files and type_info files.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| Orbix IDL Compiler Settings | page 142 |
Orbix IDL Compiler Settings

Overview

The -mfa plug-in allows the OrbixIIDL compiler to generate CICS server adapter mapping members and CICS server adapter type_info files from IDL. The behavior of the Orbix IDL compiler is defined by the IDL compiler configuration file, orbixhlq.CONFIG(IDL). This chapter details the default settings used and describes how these can be modified.

Note: IDL compiler configuration is separate from standard Orbix configuration and is contained in its own configuration member (orbixhlq.CONFIG(IDL)).

Configuration settings

The CICS server adapter mapping member configuration is listed under MFAMappings as follows:

```plaintext
MFAMappings
{
    Switch = "mfa";
    ShlibName = "ORXBMFA";
    ShlibMajorVersion = "6";
    IsDefault = "NO";
    PresetOptions = "";

    # Mapping & Type Info file suffix and ext. can be overridden
    # The default mapping file suffix is A
    # The default mapping file ext. is .map and none for OS/390
    # The default type info file suffix is B
    # The default type info file ext. is .inf and none for OS/390
    # MFAMappingExtension   = "";
    # MFAMappingSuffix      = "";
    # TypeinfoFileExtension = "";
    # TypeinfoFileSuffix    = ""
};
```

Note: Settings listed with a # are considered to be comments and are not in effect.
Mandatory settings

The first three of the preceding settings are mandatory and must not be altered. They inform the Orbix IDL compiler how to recognize the server adapter mapping member switch, and what name the DLL plug-in is stored under.

User-defined settings

All but the first three settings are user-defined and can be changed. The reason for these user-defined settings is to allow you to change, if you want, default configuration values that are set during installation. To enable a user-defined setting, use the following format:

```
setting_name = "value";
```

List of available settings

Table 4 provides an overview and description of the available settings.

Table 4:  Server Adapter Mapping Member Configuration Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IsDefault</td>
<td>Indicates whether the Orbix IDL compiler generates CICS server adapter mapping members by default from IDL. If this is set to YES, you do not need to specify the -mfa switch when running the compiler.</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PresetOptions</td>
<td>The arguments that are passed by default as parameters to the Orbix IDL compiler for the purposes of generating CICS server adapter mapping members.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFAMappingExtension</td>
<td>Extension for the CICS server adapter mapping file (on UNIX System Services).</td>
<td>map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TypeInfoFileExtension</td>
<td>Extension for the CICS server adapter type_info files (on UNIX System Services).</td>
<td>inf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4:  *Server Adapter Mapping Member Configuration Settings*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TypeInfoFileSuffix</td>
<td>Suffix for CICS server adapter type_info files (on both native z/OS and UNIX System Services). If you do not supply a value for this, a default suffix of B is used.</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFAMappingSuffix</td>
<td>Suffix for the CICS server adapter mapping member on z/OS. If you do not specify a value for this, a default suffix of A is used.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part 3
Configuring the Client Adapter and the Orbix Runtime in CICS

In this part
This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Client Adapter Configuration</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Adapter General Configuration</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Client Adapter AMTP_APPC Plug-in</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Client Adapter AMTP_XMEM Plug-in</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Client Adapter Subsystem</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter provides information needed to configure the client adapter and its components (plug-ins). It provides descriptions of all the configuration items involved in running the client adapter. It also provides details on configuring the various system components used by the client adapter.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Client Adapter Sample Configuration</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Summary of Client Adapter Plug-Ins</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Client Adapter Sample Configuration

Overview
A sample configuration member is supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation that provides an example of how you might configure and deploy the client adapter on both native z/OS and UNIX System Services.

This section discusses the following topics:
- Location of configuration templates
- Configuration scope
- Configuration scope example
- Configuring a domain

Location of configuration templates
Sample configuration templates are supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation in the following locations:
- Non-TLS: orbixhlq.CONFIG(BASETPL)
- TLS: orbixhlq.CONFIG(TLSTPL).

Note: Further configuration resides in orbixhlq.CONFIG(ORXINTRL). This contains internal configuration that should not usually require any modifications.

Configuration scope
The client adapter uses one of the following ORB names:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORBname</th>
<th>Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iona_services.cics_client</td>
<td>APPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iona_services.cics_client.cross_memory</td>
<td>Cross memory communication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The items specific to the client adapter configuration are scoped in these configuration scopes.
Configuration scope example

The following is an example of the `iona_services.cics_client` configuration scope. It includes the `cross_memory` sub-scope, which is used for the cross memory communication transport.

**Example 5: An iona_services.cics_client Configuration Scope Example**

```c
defExample
iona_services
{-# cics_client
  event_log:filters = ["*=WARN+ERROR+FATAL","IT_MFA=INFO_HI+WARN+ERROR+FATAL","IT_MFU=INFO_HI+WARN+ERROR+FATAL"];

plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence = "yes";
plugins:cicsa:iiop:host = "#{LOCAL_HOSTNAME}";
plugins:cicsa:iiop:port = "5072";

plugins:client_adapter:repository_id = "type_info";
plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source = "ID:TYPEINFO";

orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop", "ots", "amtp_appc"];

# Client Adapter amtp_appc plugin
plugins:amtp_appc:symbolic_destination = "ORXCLNT1";
plugins:amtp_appc:appc_function_wait = "5";
plugins:amtp_appc:min_comm_threads = "5";
plugins:amtp_appc:max_comm_threads = "10";

# For two-phase commit support uncomment the following lines:
#plugins:amtp_appc:maximum_sync_level = "2";
#initial_references:TransactionFactory:reference = "#{LOCAL_OTSTM_REFERENCE}";

# Client Adapter mfu plugin
plugins:ots_lite:use_internal_orb = "true";
plugins:ots_lite:orb_name = "iona_services.cics_client.ots";

ots
{
  orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop"];
};
```
Example 5: An iona_services.cics_client Configuration Scope Example

```plaintext
# Cross memory transport
cross_memory
{
  orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop"
                "iiop", "amtp_xmem"];

  plugins:amtp_xmem:symbolic_destination = "ORXCLNT1";
  plugins:amtp_xmem:min_comm_threads = "5";
  plugins:amtp_xmem:max_comm_threads = "10";
  plugins:amtp_xmem:max_segment_size = "32760";
}
```

Configuring a domain

Refer to the CORBA Administrator's Guide for details on how to configure an Application Server Platform domain.
Configuration Summary of Client Adapter Plug-Ins

Overview

Orbix configuration allows you to configure an application on a per-plug-in basis. This section provides a summary of the configuration items associated with plug-ins specific to the client adapter.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Client adapter components
- Summary of items for the amtp_appc plug-in
- Summary of items for the amtp_xmem plug-in
- Summary of items for the client adapter subsystem
- Summary of remaining configuration items

Client adapter components

The main components of the client adapter include:

- A client adapter subsystem, which is loaded by the adapter executable (many subsystems can be run by the same application).
- The amtp_appc plug-in, which is used to provide APPC transport between CICS client transactions and the client adapter.
- The amtp_xmem plug-in, which is used to provide cross memory communication transport between CICS client transactions and the client adapter.
- The common_adapter plug-in, which exposes common functionality such as support for different signature repositories (that is, type_info, IFR, and so on).
The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the `amtp_appc` plug-in. Refer to “AMTP_APPC Plug-In Configuration Items” on page 180 for more details.

**symbolic_destination**
Specifies the APPC/MVS symbolic destination name the client adapter uses for APPC services. The Orbix Runtime in CICS uses the symbolic destination to send CICS client transaction requests to the client adapter. The default value is “ORXCLNT1”.

**appc_function_wait**
Specifies the number of minutes that the client adapter can wait for a response from a CICS client transaction before canceling the request. Valid values are in the range 0–1440. The default value is 5 minutes.

**min_comm_threads**
Specifies the minimum number of client adapter threads used to service requests from CICS client transactions. Each thread processes a request from a CICS client transaction. A valid value is greater than 0. The default value is 5 threads.

**max_comm_threads**
Specifies the maximum number of client adapter threads that can be used to service requests from CICS client transactions. If all client adapter threads are busy, and the client adapter receives another request, it dynamically starts more threads up to this maximum number. The default value is 10 threads.

**maximum_sync_level**
Specifies the maximum APPC synchronization level supported by the client adapter. The value can be 0 or 2. A value of 0 does not allow CICS client transactions to perform two-phase commit processing. A value of 2 allows CICS client transactions to perform two-phase commit processing. The default value is 0.
The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the amtp_xmem plug-in. Refer to “AMTP_XMEM Plug-In Configuration Items” on page 191 for more details.

**Note:** The cross memory transport does not support two-phase commit processing.

**symbolic_destination**  This is a symbolic name that identifies the CICS client adapter. It can be up to eight characters in length. The Orbix runtime in CICS is configured to use this destination. CICS client transactions have their requests sent to the client adapter using this symbolic destination. The default value is ORXCLNT1.

**Note:** The value for this configuration item must be unique for each instance of the client adapter. Unlike APPC, the cross memory communication plug-in does not allow multiple instances of the client adapter to use the same symbolic destination.

**min_comm_threads**  Specifies the minimum number of client adapter threads used to service requests from CICS client transactions. Each thread processes a request from a CICS client transaction. A valid value is greater than 0. The default value is 5 threads.

**max_comm_threads**  Specifies the maximum number of client adapter threads that can be used to service requests from CICS client transactions. If all client adapter threads are busy, and the client adapter receives another request, it dynamically starts more threads up to this maximum number. The default value is 10 threads.
Summary of items for the client adapter subsystem

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the client adapter subsystem. Refer to “Configuring the Client Adapter Subsystem” on page 193 for more details.

- **max_segment_size**: Specifies the maximum segment size that the client adapter can receive from a client. The Orbix runtime in CICS is configured with a maximum segment size. The client adapter might be servicing one or more CICS regions. The value for `plugins:amtp_xmem:max_segment_size` must be equal to or greater than the largest segment size defined in the configuration for the Orbix runtime in CICS.

- **repository_id**: Specifies the type information source to use. This source supplies the CICS client adapter with operation signatures as required. Valid values are ifr and type_info. The default is ifr. Refer to “Type information mechanism” on page 194 for more information.

- **ifr:cache**: This value is used if `repository_id` is set to ifr. The `ifr:cache` configuration item is optional. It specifies the location of an (operation) signature cache file. This signature cache file contains a cache of operation signatures from a previous run of this client adapter. The default is no signature cache file (" ").

- **type_info:source**: This value is used if `repository_id` is set to type_info. The `type_info:source` variable denotes the location of a type_info store from which the client adapter can obtain operation signatures. Refer to “type_info store” on page 195 for more information.
The following is a summary of the remaining configuration items. Refer to “Client Adapter General Configuration” on page 157 and the CORBA Administrator’s Guide for more details.

- **event_log:filters**: Specifies the types of events the client adapter logs.
- **orb_plugins**: List of standard ORB plug-ins the client adapter should load.
- **initial_references**: Specifies the IOR of the RRS OTSTM service that coordinates two-phase commit processing initiated by CICS client transactions. The IOR is obtained by running `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(DEPLOY3)`. See the Mainframe Installation Guide for more details. The RRS OTSTM service must be running if a CICS client transaction is to be able to perform two-phase commit processing.
Client Adapter
General Configuration

This chapter provides details of the configuration items for the core client adapter. These details specify the level of Orbix event logging and plug-ins to be loaded when the ORB is initializing.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

Client Adapter Configuration Settings page 158
Client Adapter Configuration Settings

Overview

This section discusses the following topics:

- Orbix event logging
- WTO announce plug-in
- ORB plug-ins list

Orbix event logging

The related configuration item is `event_log:filters`. It specifies the level of event logging. To obtain events specific to the client adapter, the `IT_MFU` event logging subsystem can be added to this list. For example:

```
event_log:filters = ['*=WARN+ERROR+FATAL', 'IT_MFU=INFO_HI+INFO_MED+WARN+ERROR+FATAL'];
```

This logs all `IT_MFU` events (except for `INFO_LOW` — low priority informational events), and any warning, error, and fatal events from all other subsystems (for example, `IT_CORE`, `IT_GIOP`, and so on). The level of detail provided for `IT_MFU` events can be controlled by setting the relevant logging levels. Refer to the `CORBA Administrator's Guide` for more details.

The following is a categorization of the informational events associated with the `IT_MFU` subsystem.

- `INFO_HI`: Configuration settings and client adapter start-up and shutdown messages
- `INFO_MED`: APPC informational messages
- `INFO_LOW`: CICS segment data streams and two-phase commit events.
**WTO announce plug-in**

Orbix applications may be configured to write messages to the operator console on starting or shutting down successfully. This can be useful for automated operations software to keep track of these events. The WTO announce plug-in is used to implement this feature.

To enable the loading of the WTO announce plug-in in an Orbix service, such as the client adapter, add the following two configuration items in the `iona_services.cics_client` scope:

- `initial_references:IT_WTO_Announce:plugin = "wto_announce";
- `generic_server:wto_announce:enabled = "true";

**Note:** For customer-developed Orbix applications (for example, a batch COBOL or PL/I server), the `wto_announce` plug-in should be added to the end of the `orb_plugins` list in that particular application’s ORB configuration. (See "ORB plug-ins list" next for more details.) However, for all Orbix services (by default, within the `iona_services` configuration scope), it is recommended that you load the `wto_announce` plug-in by specifying the two preceding configuration items rather than by adding the `wto_announce` plug-in to the `orb_plugins` list.

When you load the WTO announce plug-in, a WTO message is issued when the server adapter ORB starts up and shuts down. Messages take the following format:

```
+ORX2001I ORB iona_services.cics_client STARTED
  (HOSTNAME:<process id>)
+ORX2002I ORB iona_services.cics_client ENDED (HOSTNAME:
  <process id>)
```

On z/OS UNIX System Services, `<process id>` is a PID. On native z/OS, `<process id>` is a job name and an A-xxxx job identifier.
The related configuration item is \texttt{orb\_plugins}. It specifies the ORB-level plug-ins that should be loaded into your application at \texttt{ORB\_init()} time. On z/OS, you can add the WTO announce plug-in support to any Orbix application by updating this list in the relevant configuration scope. For example, in the \texttt{iona\_services.cics\_client} scope:

\begin{verbatim}
orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "i1op\_profile", "giop",
              "i1op", "ots", "amtp\_appc", "wto\_announce"];
\end{verbatim}

In the case of the CICS client adapter's configuration (that is, in the \texttt{iona\_services.cics\_client} scope) the \texttt{wto\_announce} plug-in should not be included in this list, as discussed in "WTO announce plug-in" on page 159.
Configuring the Client Adapter
AMTP_APPC Plug-in

The AMTP_APPC plug-in for the client adapter uses APPC to communicate with client transactions. This chapter describes how to configure APPC for CICS, and the client adapter AMTP_APPC plug-in configuration.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

| Setting Up APPC for the Client Adapter | page 162 |
| Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC | page 176 |
| AMTP_APPC Plug-In Configuration Items | page 180 |
Setting Up APPC for the Client Adapter

Prerequisites to using APPC
Before you can run the client adapter, you must first enable the required APPC functionality on your z/OS system. Depending on your installation, one or all of these tasks might already have been completed.

Further reading
For more information on setting up APPC/MVS, refer to the IBM publication *MVS Planning: APPC/MVS Management, GC28-107*. Additionally, you can find specific information about defining APPC links in CICS in the chapter on "Defining APPC Links" in the IBM publication *CICS Intercommunication Guide, SC33-1695*.

In this section
This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Defining LUs to APPC</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining LUs to VTAM</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining the Required Resources to CICS</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining LUs to APPC

Overview

A Logical Unit (LU) name identifies each side of an APPC conversation. It is defined to APPC/MVS in the APPCPMxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB. You must define at least one LU name to use the client adapter—the LU used by the client adapter.

**Note:** CICS client transactions use the system base LU for their side of the conversations with the client adapter.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- CICS local LU
- Client adapter LU
- Specifying the APPC/MVS-side information dataset name
- Client adapter LU name and security
- Running multiple client adapters

CICS local LU

CICS does not define a local LU for transactions that use APPC/MVS. When a CICS transaction issues a request to allocate a conversation, APPC/MVS determines which local LU to use. For CICS client transactions, this is the system base LU.

For information on how APPC/MVS chooses its local LU, see the description on the allocate callable service in the chapter on “APPC/MVS TP Conversation Callable Services” in the IBM publication *Writing Transaction Programs for APPC/MVS*, GC28-1775.

An example of a system base LU is:

```plaintext
LUADD ACBNAME(MVSLU01)
  SCHED (ASCH)
  BASE
  TPDATA(SYS1.APPCTP)
  TPLEVEL(USER)
```

The definition of MVSLU01—the system base LU—is provided here as an example. This LU (perhaps with a different name) should already be defined.
The client adapter LU is used by the client adapter to receive requests from CICS client transactions, and to return replies back to CICS client transactions. It can be defined as follows:

```
LUADD ACBNAME(ORXLUCA1) NOSCHED
```

The APPC/MVS side information dataset contains APPC symbolic destination names. If your installation does not have a side information dataset, see `SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBSIVSM)` for sample JCL to create one.

The name of the side information dataset must be defined in `SYS1.PARMLIB(APPCPMxx)` (for example, `SIDEINFO DATASET(SYS1.APPCSI)`).

**Note:** If you are using the CICS APPC plug-in for the CICS server adapter, this step might already have been performed.

If you choose to secure the LU used by the client adapter, be aware that the LU name is used as part of the `APPCLU` RACF profile name for the LU. Refer to “Bind Time Security with APPC” on page 106 for more information.

If you want to run multiple client adapters, you must first decide if you want the client adapters to share APPC/MVS allocation queues.

APPC/MVS allocation queues hold requests to start APPC conversations. As client transactions initiate requests to the client adapter, they are first placed in an APPC/MVS allocation queue. The requests designate which LU and Transaction Program Name (TPN) they are destined for. The client adapter registers with APPC/MVS and specifies the LU and TPN requests it expects to process. (Refer to “Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter” on page 166 for details of how to set up the LU and TPN name used by the client adapter.) APPC/MVS delivers the requests from the allocation queue to the client adapter.

You can choose to run multiple client adapters that specify the same LU and TPN. The client adapters all share the same APPC/MVS allocation queue. APPC/MVS chooses one of the client adapters to deliver the request to. This approach can be used as a form of load balancing where the load is spread
over multiple client adapters. This approach also provides a measure of fault
tolerance. If a client adapter is stopped or goes down, allocation requests
from client transactions can still be processed by the other client adapters.
You can alternatively choose to run multiple client adapters where each
client adapter specifies a different LU and TPN. The client adapters all have
their own APPC/MVS allocation queue. This approach is useful for setting up
a test client adapter along with a production client adapter. The Orbix
runtime inside the test CICS region is configured to direct allocation requests
to the test client adapter, while the Orbix runtime inside the production CICS
region is configured to direct allocation requests to the production client
adapter.
Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter

Overview

A CICS client transaction connects to the client adapter through an APPC destination name rather than directly through the client adapter LU name. The APPC destination name is used to establish various default characteristics for the APPC conversation being initiated, including the name of the partner LU, the TPN, and a logon mode name.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Storage of the APPC destination name
- Example of the APPC destination name JCL
- Explanation of the APPC destination name JCL
- Example of multiple APPC destination names JCL
- Explanation of multiple APPC destination names JCL

Storage of the APPC destination name

The APPC destination name information is stored in the APPC-side information data set. This data set is updated using the ATBSDFMU APPC/MVS utility program.

Example of the APPC destination name JCL

The following is an example of defining an APPC destination name.

**Example 6: JCL Example for Defining an APPC Destination Name**

```
//SIADDEXEC PGM=ATBSDFMU
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSSDLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APPCSI,DISP=SHR
//SYSSDOUT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN     DD DATA
SIADD
1 DESTNAME (ORXCLNT1)
2 TPNAME (ORXCLNT1)
3 MODENAME (APPCHOST)
4 PARTNER_LU (ORXMLCA1)
/*
```
The JCL example for defining an APPC destination name can be explained as follows:

1. The `DESTNAME` is a symbolic name that contains the `TPNAME`, `MODENAME`, and `PARTNER_LU`. It is used in two places:
   - The Orbix runtime inside CICS configuration specifies which destination name the CICS region uses for APPC communication with the client adapter.
   - The `amtp_appc` plug-in configuration item `symbolic_destination`, which tells the client adapter which LU and TPN to use for APPC communication. The LU/TPN define the APPC/MVS allocation queue from which the client adapter receives allocation requests.

2. The `TPNAME` specification forms part of the APPC/MVS allocation queue designation. If you want to run a test client adapter along with a production client adapter, two symbolic destinations can be defined. They can each specify the same `MODENAME` and `PARTNER_LU`, but each can specify a different `TPNAME`. (Refer to “Explanation of multiple APPC destination names JCL” on page 168 for more information.)

3. The `MODENAME` parameter is used to name an entry in the VTAM logon mode table. This specifies other characteristics that are to be used in the conversation. See the `SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBLMODE)` data set for a definition of the `APPCHOST` logon mode, and the `SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBLJOB)` data set for the JCL to install it.

4. `PARTNER_LU` must specify the client adapter LU name.
Example of multiple APPC destination names JCL

You might want to define multiple APPC destination names to allow multiple client adapters that do not share APPC/MVS allocation queues. A good example of this is to have a production client adapter processing requests from a production CICS region, and a test client adapter processing requests from a test CICS region.

Example 7: JCL Example for Defining Multiple APPC Destination Names

```
//SIADDEXEC PGM=ATBSDFMU
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*;
//SYSSDLIB DD DSN=SYS1.APPCSI,DISP=SHR
//SYSSDOUT DD SYSOUT=*;
//SYSIN DD DATA
SIADD
DESTNAME(ORXCLNT1)
TPNAME(ORXCLNT1)
MODENAME(APPCHOST)
PARTNER_LU(ORXLUCA1)
SIADD
DESTNAME(ORXTEST)
TPNAME(ORXTEST)
MODENAME(APPCHOST)
PARTNER_LU(ORXLUCA1)
/*
```

Explanation of multiple APPC destination names JCL

The JCL example for defining multiple APPC destination names can be explained as follows:

1. The first SIADD statement defines the production destination, as explained in "Explanation of the APPC destination name JCL" on page 167.

2. A second DESTNAME is defined for the test destination. It defines a different name from the production DESTNAME. The production CICS region and production client adapter is configured to use the production DESTNAME. The test CICS region and test client adapter is configured to use the test DESTNAME.
3. The test `DESTNAME` defines a `TPNAME` that is different from the production `TPNAME`. This causes APPC/MVS to use separate allocation queues for the production and test client adapters.

4. The test `MODENAME` is the same as the production `MODENAME`.

5. The test `PARTNER_LU` is the same as the production `PARTNER_LU`. This means you can run multiple client adapters that do not share APPC/MVS allocation queues, yet still use the same LU name for each.
Defining LUs to VTAM

Overview

APP/C/MVS expects its LUs to be defined as VTAM resources, so that they can access a SNA network.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- VTAM requirements for LUs
- Using SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL)
- APPC definition parameter security requirements

VTAM requirements for LUs

Although the client adapter is usually run on the same system as the CICS region with which it communicates (that is, an LU=LOCAL conversation), VTAM application program definition (APPL) macros must still be coded for each LU. See SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL) for a sample APPL definition of an APPC LU.

Using SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL)

The following definitions for the system base LU and client adapter LUs use the SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL) definition, with some changes (which are highlighted).

Example 8: Example of APPL Definitions for Client Adapter LUs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>MVSLU01 APPL ACBNAME=MVSLU01, APPC=YES, AUTOSES=0, DDRAINL=NALLOW, DLOGMOD=APPCHOST, DMINWNL=5, DMINWNR=5, DRESPL=NALLOW, DSESLIM=10, LMDENT=19, MODETAB=LOGMDES, PARSSESS=Yes, SRBEXIT=Yes, VPACING=1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ORXLOCA1 APPL ACBNAME=ORXLOCA1, APPC=YES,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up APPC for the Client Adapter

**Example 8: Example of APPL Definitions for Client Adapter LUs**

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SECACPT=CONV,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>VERIFY=OPTIONAL,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AUTOSES=0,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDRAINL=NALLOW,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DLOGMOD=APPCHOST,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DMINWNL=5,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DMINWNR=5,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DRESPL=NALLOW,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DSESILM=10,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IDIDENT=19,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MODETAB=LOGMODES,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PARSESS=YES,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SRBEXIT=YES,</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VFACING=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The code for APPL definitions for client adapter LUs can be explained as follows:

1. Both the ACBNAME= parameter and the APPL statement label should match the LU name defined to APPC.

2. The VERIFY= and SECACPT= parameters specify the security levels for each LU. Determining the correct values for these parameters depends on the environment in which CICS and the client adapter are running. A test environment might not require the same level of security that a production environment does.

   SECACPT= specifies the greatest level of security information passed on a conversation allocation request from a CICS client transaction to the client adapter. If the LUs are secured using RACF APPCLU profiles, this level of security information can be overridden to the value set in the APPCLU profile. Refer to “Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC” on page 176 for more details. Each LU should have the same value for SECACPT.

   - SECACPT=NONE—No security information is passed on conversation allocation requests. Use this value if security is not required, such as in a development environment.

   - SECACPT=CONV—APPC/MVS passes security information (if available) on conversation allocation requests. Use this value when security is desired, such as in a production environment.
The security information that can be passed is:

- User ID
- Security profile name (treated as a group ID by APPC/MVS)
- Already verified indicator

- **SECACPT=ALREADYV**—Conversation allocation requests with security information, and conversation allocation requests with an indication that security information is already verified. Use this value when the system base LU used by CICS and the client adapter LU are both trusted. See below.

**Note:** There are other values for the **SECACPT** parameter that are not described here, because they do not apply.

3. **VERIFY=** specifies that VTAM should verify the identity of partner LUs that attempt to establish sessions with this LU. Generally each LU has the same value for **VERIFY=**, but there are valid cases where the values can be different.

- **VERIFY=NONE**—VTAM should not verify partner LUs. Use this value if security is not required.
- **VERIFY=OPTIONAL**—VTAM should verify those LUs that have session keys defined. The session keys are defined in the RACF APPCLU profile. Refer to the topic on LU 6.2 Security in the IBM publication *SNA Network Implementation Guide, SC31-8562* for more information on how VTAM verifies the partner LU. Use this value when security is desired.
- **VERIFY=REQUIRED**—VTAM should verify every partner LU. This provides even tighter security control. The system base LU used by CICS can be defined with **VERIFY=OPTIONAL**, and the client adapter LU can be defined with **VERIFY=REQUIRED**.

This provides two benefits:

- Compatibility with the CICS server adapter if it is being used.
- Only those LUs defined with a proper RACF APPCLU profile can connect to the client adapter.
If there is no possibility of unauthorized access from other systems in your SNA network, you might prefer to code SECACPT=ALREADYV and VERIFY=NONE to indicate that partner LUs do not need to be authenticated. This is safe for LU=LOCAL conversations because user information is provided directly by APPC/MVS. Therefore, there is no opportunity for the programmer of the partner LU to fabricate his or her identity. Refer to “Securing the Client Adapter” on page 315 for more details about APPC conversation security and session-level verification.

Note: The definition of MVSLU01—the system base LU—is provided here as an example. This LU (perhaps with a different name) should already be defined. You might want to modify the security parameters as described above.

Appc definitions for two-phase commit

To support two-phase commit processing, define the VTAM LUs with the ATNLOSS and SYNCLVL operands as follows:

Example 9: Example of APPL Definitions for Two-Phase Commit

| MVSLU01 APPL | ACBNAME=MVSLU01, | C |
| SECACPT=CONV, | C |
| VERIFY=OPTIONAL, | C |
| AUTOSES=0, | C |
| DDRAINL=NALLOW, | C |
| DLOGMOD=APPCHOST, | C |
| DMINNL=5, | C |
| DMINNR=5, | C |
| DRESPL=NALLOW, | C |
| DSESLIM=10, | C |
| LMDENT=19, | C |
| MODETAB=LOGMODES, | C |
| PARSESS=YES, | C |
| SRBEXIT=YES, | C |
| VPACING=1 | C |
| ATNLOSS=ALL, | C |
| ORXLUCA1 APPL | ACBNAME=ORXLCA1, | C |
| SECACPT=CONV, | C |
**Example 9:** Example of APPL Definitions for Two-Phase Commit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERIFY=OPTIONAL</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOSES=0</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDRAINE=NALLOW</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLOGMOD=APPCOST</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMMINNL=5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMINNR=5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRSPIL=NALLOW</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSESLLM=10</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMDENT=19</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODETAB=LOGMDES</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARSRESS=YES</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRBEXIT=YES</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPACING=1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATNLOSS=ALL</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNCLVL=SYNCPT</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining the Required Resources to CICS

Overview
This subsection provides the location for the required JCL to define the required APPC resources to CICS. It also describes the contents of the JCL and how it is to be used. It discusses the following topics:

- Location of required JCL
- Description of the contents of the JCL
- Using the JCL

Location of required JCL
The orbixhlq.JCLLIB(ORBIXCSD) JCL member runs the CICS offline resource definition utility to define the required APPC resources to CICS. You might need to change the STEPLIB and DFHCSD DD cards to match your CICS installation.

Description of the contents of the JCL
The sample JCL defines the following for the client adapter:

- A Connection definition which identifies the LU used by the client adapter.
- A Sessions definition which defines session characteristics for sessions between CICS and the client adapter.
- A Partner definition which defines information needed for conversations between CICS and the client adapter.
- Demonstration programs and transactions.

Using the JCL
Make the appropriate changes to the JCL and run it to define the client adapter CICS resources.

Note: If you are using the CICS server adapter with the APPC plug-in, this step might already have been performed.
Additional RACF Customization Steps for APPC

Overview

There are a number of RACF definitions related to APPC that you might need to add or change to run the client adapter. Refer to “Securing the Client Adapter” on page 315 for more details about how the client adapter fits into a secure system environment.

Much of the information provided in this section can be found in the sections relating to LU Security and Conversation Security in the IBM publication *MVS Planning: APPC/MVSManagement, GC28-1807*, as well as in the chapter on “Implementing LU 6.2 Security” in the IBM publication *CICS RACF Security Guide, SC33-1701*.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LU-to-LU Security Verification</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting LUs</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LU-to-LU Security Verification

Overview

LU-LU security verification provides a means of controlling which LUs can establish sessions with a particular LU. RACF provides the `APPCLU` class for this purpose. CICS uses the term “Bind Time Security” when referring to LU-to-LU security verification.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Enable LU-to-LU security verification in CICS
- APPCLU profiles
- APPCLU profile contents and operation
- Accessing APPCLU profiles

Enable LU-to-LU security verification in CICS

CICS requires definitions in the System Initialization Table (SIT) and the client adapter `CONNECTION` definition to enable LU-to-LU security verification.

The required changes to the SIT are that you specify `SEC=YES` and `XAPPC=YES`.

After the changes to the SIT are made, CICS must be recycled for the changes to take effect.

**Note:** If you are using the CICS server adapter APPC plugin, this step might already have been performed.

The required change to the client adapter `CONNECTION` is that you specify `BINDSECURITY=YES`.

APPCLU profiles

APPCLU profiles can be defined to control which LUs can establish sessions with a particular LU.

Each APPCLU profile name has the form:

'networkid.local-lu-name.partner-lu-name'.

Each profile contains information to be used by APPC/MVS on one side of a session between the two named LUs. This means each side of a session has its own specific profile. CICS requires the system base LU to communicate with the client adapter. However, when defining APPCLU profiles to secure the CICS LU, the LU defined on the `APPLID` parameter of the SIT is the LU that must be secured.
For example, if LU CICSTS1 attempts to establish a session with LU ORXLUCA1, APPC/MVS on the initiating (outbound) side examines the ‘networkid.CICSTS1.ORXLUCA1’ profile, and APPC/MVS on the receiving (inbound) side examines the ‘networkid.ORXLUCA1.CICSTS1’ profile. LU CICSTS1 was defined on the APPLID parameter of the SIT.

**APPCLU profile contents and operation**

Each APPCLU profile contains a session key, which is a string of letters or numbers, and a CONVSEC setting. When a session is initiated between two LUs, APPC/MVS on the initiating (outbound) side passes the session key found in its APPCLU profile to APPC/MVS on the receiving (inbound) side. If APPC/MVS on the inbound side finds that the received session key matches the session key in its own APPCLU profile, it overrides the VTAM SECACPT-setting with the CONVSEC setting from its profile. Thus, to allow a CICS client transaction to authenticate itself to the client adapter, the following definitions might be used:

```plaintext
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.ORXLUCA1.CICSTS1 UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.CICSTS1.ORXLUCA1 UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCLU)
```

To refresh the profiles in VTAM, use the following VTAM commands:

```plaintext
F VTAM,PROFILES,ID=CICSTS1
F VTAM,PROFILES,ID=ORXLUCA1
```

**Accessing APPCLU profiles**

It is not necessary to permit the client adapter or CICS region to have user IDs for the APPCLU profiles. However, access to the profiles should be tightly controlled to ensure that only appropriate users can read or change the session keys.
Protecting LUs

Overview

Protecting LUs involves controlling the users that are permitted to use the CICS local LU that initiates requests to the client adapter LU, and controlling the users that are permitted to use the client adapter LU that receives requests from CICS.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Controlling access to the CICS local LU
- Controlling access to the client adapter LU

Controlling access to the CICS local LU

The CICS local LU initiates requests to allocate conversations with the client adapter. This LU is considered the APPC port of entry. It can be secured by controlling the users that are permitted to use the LU. The RACF APPCPORT class provides this security control. First, a profile is defined for the CICS local LU that permits no access. A PERMIT is then issued for each user that requires access to the CICS local LU. For example:

```
RDEFINE APPCPORT CICSTS1 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT CICSTS1 CLASS(APPCPORT) ID(USER1) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT CICSTS1 CLASS(APPCPORT) ID(USER2) ACCESS(READ)
```

SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCPORT) RACLIST(APPCPORT)

Controlling access to the client adapter LU

The client adapter LU receives requests initiated by the CICS local LU. The client adapter LU can be secured by controlling the users that are permitted to use this LU. The RACF APPL class provides this security control. First, a profile is defined for the client adapter LU that permits no access. A PERMIT is then issued for each user that requires access to the client adapter LU. For example:

```
RDEFINE APPL ORXLUCA1 UACC(NONE)
PERMIT ORXLUCA1 CLASS(APPL) ID(USER1) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT ORXLUCA1 CLASS(APPL) ID(USER2) ACCESS(READ)

SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPL) RACLIST(APPL)
SETROPTS RACLIST(APPL) REFRESH
```
# AMTP_APPC Plug-In Configuration Items

## Overview

This section discusses the following topics:
- APPC destination
- AMTP function timeout
- APPC minimum communication threads
- APPC maximum communication threads

## APPC destination

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_appc:symbolic_destination`. This specifies the APPC/MVS symbolic destination name that identifies the LU, TPN, and LOGMODE the client adapter uses. The Orbix runtime in CICS is configured to use this destination. Refer to “Customizing Orbix Symbolic Destination” on page 206 for more information on configuring the destination in the Orbix runtime in CICS. CICS client transactions have their requests sent to the client adapter using this symbolic destination. The default value is `GRXCLNT1`.

The specified symbolic destination name is verified only when a CICS client transaction attempts to send a request to the client adapter. This means the CICS region does not have to be available when you start the client adapter. Refer to “Example of the APPC destination name JCL" on page 166 for details of how to define the symbolic destination to APPC/MVS.

## AMTP function timeout

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_appc:function_wait`. It specifies the number of minutes the client adapter waits for a response from the CICS client transaction before canceling the request. It prevents the client adapter from having to wait indefinitely for a response from the CICS client transaction if the transaction has stopped for some reason. The default is 5 minutes.

## APPC minimum communication threads

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_appc:min_comm_threads`. It specifies the minimum number of client adapter threads that are used to service CICS client transaction requests. Each thread services a single client transaction request. Multiple threads allow for multiple concurrent client requests to be processed. The default is 5 threads.
AMTP_APPC Plug-In Configuration Items

### APPC maximum communication threads

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_appc:max_comm_threads`. It specifies the maximum number of client adapter threads that can be used to service CICS client transaction requests. If all client adapter threads are busy, and another request arrives, further threads are started dynamically up to this maximum number. The default is 10 threads.

### AMTP maximum sync level

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_appc:maximum_sync_level`. It specifies the maximum APPC synchronization level supported by the client adapter. The value can be 0 or 2. A value of 0 indicates that two-phase commit processing is not used by CICS transactions. A value of 2 indicates that two-phase commit processing is available for CICS transactions to use. Transactions that do not require two-phase commit processing can still function correctly if the maximum sync level is set to 2. The default value is 0.
CHAPTER 14

Configuring the Client Adapter AMTP_XMEM Plug-in

The AMTP_XMEM plug-in for the client adapter uses cross memory communication to communicate with client transactions. This chapter describes how to set up and configure the client adapter for cross memory communication.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites and Further Reading</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running the Client Adapter APF-Authorized</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running the Client Adapter in Non-Swappable Address Space</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding the Impact of Cross Memory Communication</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMTP_XMEM Plug-In Configuration Items</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prerequisites and Further Reading

Prerequisites to using cross memory communication

Cross memory communication is integrated into the z/OS operating system. Before using cross memory communication as the transport mechanism between CICS and the client adapter, be aware of the following restrictions.

- The client adapter must be run APF-authorized.
- The client adapter must run in a non-swappable address space.
- After the client adapter is stopped, its address space ID becomes unavailable until the next IPL.
- CICS and the client adapter must be running on the same LPAR.
- Two-phase commit processing is not supported when using the cross memory communication transport.

Further reading

For more information on cross memory communication, refer to the IBM publication *MVS Programming: Extended Addressability Guide*, SA22-7614.
Overview
To enable the CICS client adapter to use cross memory communication, its load libraries must be APF-authorized. This section discusses the following topics:

- “Data sets that must be APF-authorized”
- “Authorizing the data sets”

Data sets that must be APF-authorized
All data sets in the STEPLIB concatenation of the orbixhlq.JCLLIB(CICSCA) JCL, which is used to run the CICS client_adapter, must be APF-authorized. These data sets include:

- orbixhlq.ADMIN.LOADLIB
- orbixhlq.LOADLIB
- orbixhlq.LPALIB
- cpphlq.SCLBDLL
- lehlq.SCEERUN

In the preceding list, cpphlq represents the high-level qualifier for the C++ data sets; and lehlq represents the high-level qualifier for the LE (Language Environment) data sets.

Note: If the STEPLIB contains other data sets, they must also be APF-authorized

Authorizing the data sets
Your systems programmer can authorize the necessary data sets. There are two methods available to authorize a data set. Users with the relevant authority can do either of the following:

- Issue the SETPROG command to dynamically make a data set APF-authorized. For example, to dynamically authorize an SMS-managed data set, issue the following command:

  `SETPROG APF,ADD,DSNAME=orbixhlq.LOADLIB,SMS`
After issuing the command, authorization can be verified by issuing the following command:

```
D PROG,APF
```

If the data set is authorized, it appears in the command output.

- **Add the dataset name to the PROGxx parmlib member and issue the SET PROG-xx command.** This method ensures that the data set is authorized across IPLs if the PROGxx member is referenced during the IPL.
Running the Client Adapter in Non-Swappable Address Space

Overview
The CICS client adapter provides a Program Call (PC) routine when running in client mode. The CICS address space calls this PC routine to transfer data between CICS and the CICS client adapter. A PC routine must run in an address space that cannot be swapped out.

This section discusses the following topics:

- “Defining the client adapter to run in non-swappable address space”
- “Skipping the definition”

Defining the client adapter to run in non-swappable address space
The CICS client adapter can be defined to the system as a non-swappable address space by providing a PPT definition in the SCHEDxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB. Your systems programmer can set up this definition:

```
PPT PGMNAME(ORXCICSA)
   NOSWAP
   NOPREF
```

For this change to take effect, issue the SET SCH=xx z/OS command.

Skipping the definition
The preceding PPT definition is not required for the CICS client adapter to run in a non-swappable address space. The client adapter issues a SYSEVENT TRANSWAP macro to put itself into non-swap mode. This works regardless of whether or not a PPT definition exists.

Even though it is not required, a PPT definition might prove useful for the purposes of providing documentation on programs that run on in a non-swappable address space.
However, you might choose to not provide a PPT definition if the CICS client adapter and CICS server adapter both run on the same LPAR. Both adapters use the same program name of ORXCICSA.

A PPT definition causes both adapters to run in a non-swappable address space. Because the server adapter does not require the non-swap property, an installation might want to skip the PPT definition, resulting in only the client adapter running in a non-swappable address space.
Understanding the Impact of Cross Memory Communication

Overview

The use of cross memory communication involves multiple address spaces communicating with each other. The address spaces communicate by calling PC routines. For example, the CICS address space communicates with the CICS client adapter by calling a PC routine provided by the CICS client adapter.

Two ways to set up authorization

To enable one CICS address space to call a PC routine in another address space, proper authorization must be granted, and system tables must be connected between the two address spaces. This setup can be shared between the client address space (CICS), and the server address space (CICS client adapter). Alternatively, the server address space can perform the entire setup.

Shared setup

If the setup is shared between address spaces, this requires the client (CICS) to run with its entire set of load libraries APF-authorized. If it is not desirable in a particular installation to run CICS with APF-authorized load libraries, you can avoid shared setup by allowing the server address space perform the entire setup.

Server address space setup

To avoid the need to have CICS load libraries APF-authorized, the client adapter currently supports server address space setup only. However, allowing the server address space to perform the entire cross memory communication setup comes at a cost. When the CICS client adapter is started, it is assigned an address space ID (ASID). When the CICS client adapter is subsequently stopped, its ASID becomes unavailable until the next IPL. A message similar to the following appears in the system log:

IEF352I ADDRESS SPACE UNAVAILABLE
Because the CICS client adapter is intended to be a long-running service, and not frequently stopped and restarted between IPLs, this should not result in many ASIDs becoming unavailable.

For more information on cross memory communication, and why ASIDs become unavailable, refer to the following IBM publication:

*MVS Programming: Extended Addressability Guide, SA22-7614.*

---

**ASID reuse**

Since z/OS 1.9, the operating system can reuse an ASID. This facility is enabled by adding the following to the `SYS1.PARMLIB(DIAGxx)` member:

```plaintext
REUSASID(YES)
```

You must perform the following steps when starting the client adapter:

1. Place the client adapter JCL in a suitable PROCLIB.
2. Use the `START` command to start the client adapter.

**Note:** Simply submitting a job to start the client adapter results in a lost ASID when the client adapter is stopped.

3. Use the `REUSASID` parameter of the `START` command.

For example, to start an instance of the client adapter in `SYS1.PROCLIB(MYXFRMR)`, issue the following command:

```plaintext
START MYXFRMR, REUSASID=YES
```

For more information on reusable ASIDs, see the following IBM publication:

*MVS Programming: Extended Addressability Guide, SA22-7614.*
### AMTP_XMEM Plug-In Configuration Items

#### Overview
This section discusses the following topics:
- “Cross memory communication destination”
- “Cross memory communication minimum threads”
- “Cross memory communication maximum threads”
- “Cross memory communication maximum segment size”

#### Cross memory communication destination
The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_xmem:symbolic_destination`. This is a symbolic name that identifies the CICS client adapter. It can be up to eight characters in length. The Orbix runtime in CICS is configured to use this destination. CICS client transactions have their requests sent to the client adapter using this symbolic destination. The default value is `ORXCLNT1`.

**Note:** The value for this configuration item must be unique for each instance of the client adapter. Unlike APPC, the cross memory communication plug-in does not allow multiple instances of the client adapter to use the same symbolic destination.

#### Cross memory communication minimum threads
The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_xmem:min_comm_threads`. It specifies the minimum number of client adapter threads that are used to service CICS client transaction requests. Each thread services a single client transaction request. Multiple threads allow for multiple concurrent client requests to be processed. The default is 5 threads.

#### Cross memory communication maximum threads
The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_xmem:max_comm_threads`. It specifies the maximum number of client adapter threads that can be used to service CICS client transaction requests. If all client adapter threads are busy, and another request arrives, further threads are started dynamically up to this maximum number. The default is 10 threads.
Cross memory communication
maximum segment size

The related configuration item is `plugins:amtp_xmem:max_segment_size`. It specifies the maximum segment size that the client adapter can receive from a client. The Orbix runtime in CICS is configured with a maximum segment size. The client adapter might be servicing one or more CICS regions. The value for `plugins:amtp_xmem:max_segment_size` must be equal to or greater than the largest segment size defined in the configuration for the Orbix runtime in CICS.
Configuring the Client Adapter Subsystem

The client adapter receives CICS client transaction requests from the AMTP_APPC or AMTP_XMEM plug-ins, locates target objects, invokes operations, and returns results to the AMTP_APPC or AMTP_XMEM plug-ins. This functionality is implemented as a client adapter subsystem that is dynamically loaded by the adapter application. This chapter describes how to configure the client adapter subsystem.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topic:

Client Adapter Subsystem Configuration page 194
Client Adapter Subsystem Configuration

Overview

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Type information mechanism
- IFR signature cache file
- type_info store

Type information mechanism

The related configuration item is `plugins:client_adapter:repository_id`. It specifies the repository used by the client adapter to store operation signatures. Two repositories are supported: ifr and type_info. The default is type_info. Refer to “Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information” on page 254 for more information on the role of type information.

IFR signature cache file

If the client adapter is configured to use the IFR as the type information repository (a store of operation signatures), an IFR signature cache file can be used to improve performance. The related configuration item is `plugins:client_adapter:ifr:cache`. Refer to “Using an IFR Signature Cache file” on page 252 for more information on how IFR signature cache files work.

The filename specification for the signature cache file can take one of several forms:

- The following example reads the mappings from a file in the z/OS UNIX System Services hierarchical file system (HFS):

  ```
  plugins:client_adapter:ifr:cache = 
  "/home/user/sigcache.txt;"
  ```

- The following example shows the syntax to indicate that the mappings are cached in a flat file (PS) data set, which is created with the default attributes used by the LE runtime:

  ```
  plugins:client_adapter:ifr:cache = 
  "/orbixhlq.DEMO.IFRCACHE";
  ```
The data set is created with the default attributes used by the LE runtime. Depending on the number of interfaces and the complexity of the types used, this might not be large enough. In this case, the client adapter saves as many cache entries as possible and then issues error messages. If this occurs, you should preallocate a larger data set with the same attributes, and use this name the next time you start the client adapter.

**Note:** Do not use members of partitioned data sets as a signature cache file.

If the client adapter is configured to use a type_info store as the type information repository (a store of operation signatures), the location of the store must be supplied. The related configuration item is `plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source`.

The `plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source` variable can be set to one of the following:

- **An HFS file (z/OS UNIX System Services)**
  Specifies a file to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from this file during start-up. If a refresh is requested (via `itadmin mfa refresh` for example), this file is re-read. For example:

  ```
  plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source = "/home/bob/type_info.txt";
  ```

- **An HFS directory (z/OS UNIX System Services)**
  Specifies a directory to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from all files in this directory during start-up. If a refresh is requested, all files in the directory are browsed until the relevant operation signature(s) are found. For example:

  ```
  plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source = "/home/bob/typeinfo_store";
  ```

- **A PDS member (native z/OS)**
Specifies a PDS member (batch) to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from this member during start-up. If a refresh is requested, this member is re-read. For example:

```plaintext
plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source = "MY1.TYPEINFO";
```

- **A PDS (native z/OS)**
  Specifies a dataset to use as a type_info source. Operation signatures are read from all members in this dataset during start-up. If a refresh is requested, all members in the dataset are browsed until the relevant operation signature(s) are found. For example:

```plaintext
plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source = "MY1.TYPEINFO";
```

For PDS names, you can use a DD name, as long as this is defined to the client adapter start JCL, `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(CICSICA)`.

**Note:** The use of HFS directories or a PDS is preferable to the use of flat files, because these methods are better suited to the dynamic addition or removal of interface information, and they can also address IDL versioning.
CHAPTER 16

Configuring the Orbix Runtime in CICS

This chapter provides information on configuring the Orbix runtime that is used by Orbix clients running in CICS.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customizing CICS</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Orbix Configuration</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Orbix Event Logging</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Orbix Maximum Segment Size</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Orbix Symbolic Destination</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing CICS

Overview
Before you can run Orbix CICS applications in your region, you must perform a number of additional steps to enable your CICS system to support Orbix clients. Depending on your installation, one or all of these tasks might already have been completed. You must verify this with the systems programmer responsible for CICS at your site.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Installing language environment support
- Installing support for C++ classes in CICS
- Installing sample Orbix CICS resource definitions
- Updating the CICS region

Installing language environment support
CICS Language Environment (LE) support is not installed as standard. To enable LE support in CICS you must perform a number of steps. Refer to the IBM manual Language Environment for OS/390 Customization for details on installing LE support in CICS.

If LE support has been successfully installed in CICS, the following message is written to the console:

```
DFHAP1203I CICS Language Environment is being initialized
```

If you cannot see this message, LE support is not available under CICS and any Orbix activities fail.

Installing support for C++ classes in CICS
Support for the C++ standard classes must be explicitly defined to CICS. Refer to the IBM manual OS/390 C/C++ Programming Guide for details of the steps required to run C++ application programs under CICS. In particular, note that the standard C++ DLLs such as IOSTREAM must be defined to CICS.

Failure to do this results in the following messages being issued from CICS when attempting to run an Orbix CICS transaction:

```
EDC6063I DLL name is IOSTREAM
EDC5207S Load request for DLL load module unsuccessful.
```
C++ support is required by Orbix itself, which is written in C++.

**Note:** From the Orbix CICS programming perspective, clients can only be written in COBOL or PL/I at this time.

## Installing sample Orbix CICS resource definitions

The data set `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(ORBIXCSD)` contains a job to run `DFHCSDUP`, which is the CICS offline resource definition utility, to define the CICS resources used by the sample jobs and demonstrations. You can run this as is, or just use it as a reference when defining the resources online with the CEDA transaction. When the resources have been defined, use CEDA to install the whole group.

## Updating the CICS region

To update the CICS region perform the following steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Add five libraries to the CICS region's DFHRPL concatenation as follows:  
  DD DSN=orbixhlq.DEMO.CICS.CBL.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
  DD DSN=orbixhlq.DEMO.CICS.PLI.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
  DD DSN=orbixhlq.MFA.LOADLIB,DISP=SHR  
  DD DSN=CEE.SCEERUN,DISP=SHR  
  DD DSN=CBC.SCLBDLL,DISP=SHR  
  Where hlq and version represents the location of your Orbix installation. |
| 2    | Add `CEE.SCEERUN` to the STEPLIB concatenation. |
| 3    | Recycle the regions to pick up these libraries. |

**Note:** If you are using the CICS server adapter, this step might have already been performed.
Customizing Orbix Configuration

Overview

The Orbix configuration inside CICS is DLL-based. (DLL is the acronym for Dynamic Link Library.) The Orbix runtime inside CICS does not access a file for configuration information, but instead gets configuration information from a DLL. The DLL resides in the Orbix CICS runtime library that was added to the CICS region’s DFHRPL. The ORXMFACx member is the configuration DLL.

This section discusses the following topics:

• How the configuration is changed
• Steps to change the configuration
• S390 Assembler program variables

How the configuration is changed

Changing the configuration involves updating the configuration DLL. The DLL is updated by assembling and linking an S390 Assembler program that defines the configuration settings. See orbixhlq>JCLLIB(MFACLINK) for sample JCL to update the DLL. The sample JCL runs the Assembler and re-links the configuration in the DLL. The JCL contains the S390 Assembler program that defines the configuration settings.

Steps to change the configuration

Perform the following steps to update the configuration DLL:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Make a backup of your current configuration DLL. The configuration DLL is in orbixhlq&gt;MFA.LOADLIB(ORXMFACx).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Make the appropriate changes to the orbixhlq&gt;JCLLIB(MFACLINK) JCL, as outlined in the JCL comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Change the S390 Assembler program to define the new configuration settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Submit the JCL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### S390 Assembler program variables

The following table lists the Assembler variables that can be changed in order to change the configuration:

Table 6: S390 Assembler Program Variables and Default Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assembler Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOGLVL</td>
<td>Event logging level.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXSEG</td>
<td>Maximum segment size.</td>
<td>32760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEOUT</td>
<td>Maximum time for a client request to complete. Applies only when cross memory communication is used.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMBDST</td>
<td>Symbolic destination.</td>
<td>ORXCLNT1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCALLU</td>
<td>Used to specify if cross memory is to be used for communication. Ignored when APPC communication is used.</td>
<td>IMSLUE01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table lists the Assembler variables that can be changed in order to change the configuration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Make the updated DLL available to your CICS region for the configuration changes to take effect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing Orbix Event Logging

Overview

For the Orbix runtime in CICS, most of the configuration settings are fixed. However, the level of event logging performed by the runtime can be customized for the client adapter.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Customizing the level of event logging
- ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting

Customizing the level of event logging

This is done by modifying the ORXMFACx DLL. This DLL contains an S390 Assembler CSECT that supplies the event logging string to the runtime.

Event logging settings

The event logging settings are as follows:

Table 7: Event Logging Settings for the Client Adapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>LOG_NONE—no logging in CICS is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>LOG_ERROR—only log errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>LOG_WARNING—log warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_HIGH—log high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_MED—log medium priority informational messages, high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_LOW—log low priority informational messages, medium priority informational messages, high priority informational messages, warnings and errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>LOG_INFO_ALL—log all messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `ORXMFACx` DLL shipped with the client adapter has a setting of 2 for event logging in CICS. This means that all warning and error messages are displayed, but none of the informational messages are displayed.

The `ORXMFACx` DLL setting can be modified to some other value. For example, to help trace a problem with a transaction in CICS, it can be changed to 6.
Customizing Orbix Maximum Segment Size

Overview
The Orbix runtime in CICS sends client transaction data to the client adapter in a stream of segments. The maximum size of these segments can be customized.

This section discusses the following topics:
- ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Maximum segment size constraints

ORXMFACx DLL setting
The ORXMFACx DLL shipped with the client adapter has a setting of 32760 for the maximum segment size. (This is 32K rounded down to be a multiple of eight.)

Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting
The Orbix runtime in CICS builds up segments of this size. For APPC, multiple segments of this size are used to transmit data. The 32K APPC limit for a single segment applies, but all the segments together can be more than 32K. Depending on your network definitions, these segments can be further broken up into smaller segments by VTAM and chained when they are transmitted.

For cross memory, segments of this size are moved directly between CICS and the client adapter address space.

The ORXMFACx DLL setting can be modified to be some other value if, for example, your installation has restrictions on the size of APPC buffers. For example, it might be changed to 4096 to meet an installation requirement. Change MAXSEG in the Assembler program to modify the maximum segment size.
**Maximum segment size constraints**

When choosing a value for the maximum segment size consider the following:

- The value must be a multiple of 8
- The minimum value is 32
- The maximum value is 32760
- The default value is 32760
Customizing Orbix Symbolic Destination

Overview

The Orbix runtime in CICS uses APPC or cross memory when communicating with the client adapter.

When using APPC, an APPC allocate is used to initiate an APPC conversation with the client adapter. The APPC allocate must identify the client adapter as the target of the allocate request. An APPC symbolic destination is used to identify the client adapter. The symbolic destination can be customized.

When using cross memory, the PC (program call) number of the PC routine residing in the client adapter address space is determined by using name/token services. The symbolic destination is the name portion of the name/token. The PC number is found in the token portion of the name token. The client adapter publishes the name token, and the runtime in CICS uses the symbolic destination to lookup the name/token.

This section discusses the following topics:

- ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting
- Symbolic destination restrictions

ORXMFACx DLL setting

The ORXMFACx DLL shipped with the client adapter has a setting of ORXCLNT1 for the symbolic destination.

Modifying the ORXMFACx DLL setting

The ORXMFACx DLL setting can be modified to some other value.

When using APPC, if your installation has naming standards for symbolic destinations, it can be changed to, for example, PRODCADEP. Change SYMBOLST in the Assembler program to modify the APPC symbolic destination.

When using cross memory, use a name that corresponds to a valid name/token pair name.
Symbolic destination restrictions

When using APPC, consider the following when choosing a value for the symbolic destination:

- The default value is ORXCLNT1.
- The value must match the setting of the client adapter’s AMTP_APPC plug-in configuration item (plugins:amtp_appc:symbolic_destination). Refer to "APPC destination" on page 180 for more information on the AMTP_XMEM plug-in configuration setting.
- Refer to “Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter” on page 166 for more information on how to define a symbolic destination to APPC/MVS.

When using cross memory, consider the following when choosing a value for the symbolic destination:

- The default value is ORXCLNT1.
- The value must match the setting of the client adapter’s AMTP_XMEM plug-in configuration item (plugins:amtp_xmem:symbolic_destination). Refer to “Cross memory communication destination” on page 191 for more information on the AMTP_XMEM plug-in configuration setting.
Part 4

Securing and Using the CICS Server Adapter

In this part

This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Securing the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapping IDL Interfaces to CICS</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter provides details of security considerations involved in using the CICS server adapter. It provides a review of general Orbix security implications and the relevant CICS security mechanisms. It describes the various security modes that the EXCI-based and APPC-based server adapters support, with particular emphasis on how each mode affects the existing CICS security mechanisms.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security Configuration Items</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Security Considerations</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCI-Based Security Considerations</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPC-Based Security Considerations</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Security Configuration Items

Overview

This section provides an example and details of how to configure the CICS server adapter to run with Transport Layer Security (TLS) enabled. The sample configuration includes an isf sub-scope that highlights the configuration items required to integrate with the IONA Security Framework (iSF) and, in particular, enable CSIv2-based authentication using the off-host Security service. The isf sub-scope also includes configuration items that allow you to deploy a fully standalone CICS adapter service.

Sample configuration

Example 10 provides an overview of the configuration items used to enable security with the server adapter.

Example 10: Sample Security Configuration for CICS Server Adapter

(Sheet 1 of 4)

```plaintext
plugins:security:share_credentials_across_orbs = "true";

# By default, use TLS V1. Downgrade to SSL V3 if the remote
# peer is unable to support TLS V1.
policies:mechanism_policy:protocol_version = ["TLS_V1", "SSL_V3"];

# Please change the following if you have only export strength
# encryption available on the machine.
policies:mechanism_policy:ciphersuites = ["RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA",
                                                              "RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5"];

plugins:systemssl_toolkit:saf_keyring
    = "%{LOCAL_SSL_USER_SAF_KEYRING}";

principal_sponsor:use_principal_sponsor = "true";
principal_sponsor:auth_method_id = "security_label";

# By default, use the 'iona_services' certificate from the keyring
principal_sponsor:auth_method_data = ["label=iona_services"];

# By default the following policies are used to deploy a
# fully secure domain where client authentication is not required:
# policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:requires =
["Confidentiality", "DetectMisordering",
```
Example 10: Sample Security Configuration for CICS Server Adapter
(Sheet 2 of 4)

"DetectReplay", "Integrity");
policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:supports =
["Confidentiality", "EstablishTrustInTarget",
"EstablishTrustInClient", "DetectMisordering",
"DetectReplay", "Integrity");
policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:requires =
["Confidentiality", "EstablishTrustInTarget",
"DetectMisordering", "DetectReplay", "Integrity");
policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:supports =
["Confidentiality", "EstablishTrustInTarget",
"EstablishTrustInClient", "DetectMisordering",
"DetectReplay", "Integrity");

# For semi-secure services, the following policies would be used:
#
#policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:requires =
#   ["NoProtection"];
#policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:supports =
#   ["NoProtection", "Confidentiality",
#    "EstablishTrustInTarget", "EstablishTrustInClient",
#    "DetectMisordering", "DetectReplay", "Integrity");
#policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:requires =
#   ["NoProtection"];
#policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:supports =
#   ["NoProtection", "Confidentiality",
#    "EstablishTrustInTarget", "EstablishTrustInClient",
#    "DetectMisordering", "DetectReplay", "Integrity");
#
# If you are going to use a semi-secure approach, please
# search this file for "orb_plugins" and add "iiop" into
# the list.

orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop",
   "iiop_tls");

IT_LocatorReplicas = ["iona_services.locator=corbaloc:iiops:1.2@%{LOCAL\_HOSTNAME}:%{LOCAL_TLS_LOCATOR_PORT},it_iiops:1.2@%{LOCAL_HOSTNAME}:%{LOCAL_TLS_LOCATOR_PORT},iiop:1.2@%{LOCAL_HOSTNAME}:%{LOCAL_LOCATOR_PORT}\=/IT_LocatorReplica");

iona_services
{
   orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop",
   "iiop_tls", "ots"];
Example 10: Sample Security Configuration for CICS Server Adapter
(Sheet 3 of 4)

```
generic_server:wto_announce:enabled = "true";
...
cicsa
{
  # Settings for well-known addressing:
  # (mandatory if direct_persistence is enabled)
  #
  # plugins:cicsa:iiop_tls:port = "5107";
  # plugins:cicsa:iiop_tls:host = "%(LOCAL_HOSTNAME)";

  isf
  {
    # enable ISF authentication
    #
    orb_plugins = ["iiop_profile", "giop",
                   "iiop_tls", "local_log_stream",
                   "ots", "gsp", "portable_interceptor"];

    event_log:filters = ["IT_CSI=*", "IT_GSP=*",
                         "IT_IIOPTLS=*",
                         "IT_MFA=INFO_HI+WARN+ERROR+FATAL"];

    binding:server_binding_list
      = ["CSI+GSP+OTS", "CSI+GSP", "CSI+OTS", "CSI"];

    # standalone ISF-enabled adapter
    #
    plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence = "yes";
    plugins:cicsa:iiop_tls:port = "5106";
    plugins:cicsa:iiop:port = "5006";

    # search for an access ID in the received credentials,
    # and if available, use that ID to perform SAF checks
    # when starting CICS transactions
    #
    plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal = "yes";
    plugins:cicsa:check_security_credentials = "yes";

    # IOR for the off-host Security Service -
    # not required if the adapter is only intended to
    # perform identity assertion on the propagated CSI::IdentityToken
```
Example 10: Sample Security Configuration for CICS Server Adapter
(Sheet 4 of 4)

```plaintext
# initial_references:IT_SecurityService:reference = "";

policies:csi:auth_over_transport:target_supports = 
  ["EstablishTrustInClient"];

# allow non-CSIv2 based requests to proceed for
# demonstrational purposes. Insert this config item
# to enforce CSIv2 authentication:
#    policies:csi:auth_over_transport:target_requires =
#       ["EstablishTrustInClient"];

policies:csi:auth_over_transport:server_domain_name = "IONA";

policies:csi:attribute_service:target_supports =
    ["IdentityAssertion"];

#
# ISF Authorization:
#
# - this variable can be used to disable authorization:
plugins:gsp:enable_authorization = "false";
#
# - use local store for ACL (default: local):
plugins:gsp:authorization_policy_store_type = "local";
#
# - specify file URL (UTF-8 encoded data in USS):
plugins:gsp:action_role_mapping_file =
    "file:///my/action/role/mapping.xml";
#
# - centralized support:
plugins:gsp:authorization_policy_store_type = "centralized";
#
});
```
The following is a summary of the security-related configuration items associated with the global scope:

- **plugins:security:share_credentials_across_orbs**: Enables own security credentials to be shared across ORBs. Normally, when you specify an own SSL/TLS credential (using the principal sponsor or the principal authenticator), the credential is available only to the ORB that created it. By setting this configuration item to `true`, however, the own SSL/TLS credentials created by one ORB are automatically made available to any other ORBs that are configured to share credentials.

- **policies:mechanism_policy:protocol_version**: Specifies the protocol version used by a security capsule (ORB instance). It can be set to `SSL_V3` or `TLS_V1`.

- **policies:mechanism_policy:ciphersuites**: Specifies a list of cipher suites for the default mechanism policy.

- **plugins:systemssl_toolkit:saf_keyring**: Specifies the RACF keyring to be used as the source of X.509 certificates.

- **principal_sponsor:use_principal_sponsor**: This must be set to `true` to indicate that the certificate information is to be specified in the configuration file.

- **principal_sponsor:auth_method_id**: This must be set to `security_label` to indicate that the certificate lookup should be performed using the label mechanism.

- **principal_sponsor:auth_method_data**: If you are using TLS security, this specifies the label that should be used to look up the SSL/TLS certificate in the SAF key store. The specified label name must match the label name under which the server certificate was imported into, or created in, the key store (for example, in RACF).
The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the iona_services:cicsa:isf sample configuration scope:

- **orb_plugins**: List of standard ORB plug-ins the CICS server adapter should load when running in secure mode.
- **event_log:filters**: Specifies the types of events that the CICS server adapter logs in secure mode.
- **binding:server_binding_list**: Specifies a list of potential server-side bindings.
- **plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence**: Specifies the persistence mode adopted by the CICS server adapter service in secure mode. This is an optional item. The **iiop_tls:port** is required if this is specified as yes.

**Note:** See the *Mainframe Security Guide* for more details of these configuration items.
plugins:cicsa:iiop_tls:port
Specifies the TCP/IP port number that the CICS server adapter uses to listen for incoming secure requests. Valid values are in the range 1025–65535. This is an optional item. Default is 5106.

plugins:cicsa:iiop:port
Specifies the TCP/IP port number that the CICS server adapter uses to listen for incoming insecure requests. Valid values are in the range 1025–65535. This is an optional item. Default is 5006.

plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal
Indicates whether the CICS server adapter should verify the client principal user ID with SAF before trying to start the target CICS program under that ID. The default is no.

plugins:cicsa:check_security_credentials
Indicates whether the CICS server adapter should query the CSI received credentials for a user ID before defaulting to the GIOP Principal value, on receiving a client request.

initial_references:
- IT_SecurityService:reference
  Specifies the IOR for the off-host Security service.

policies:csi:auth_over_transport:target_supports
Specifies that the target server supports receiving username/password authentication data from the client.

policies:csi:auth_over_transport:target_requires
Specifies that the target server requires the client to send username/password authentication data.

policies:csi:auth_over_transport:server_domain_name
Specifies the server’s CSIv2 authentication domain name.

policies:csi:attribute_service:target_supports
Specifies that the target server supports receiving propagated user identities from the client.
plugins:gsp:enable_authorization

Specifies if an ISF authorization check should be made based upon the received CSI credentials.

plugins:gsp:
  authorization_policy_store_type

Indicates which ACL store to use for obtaining authorization policy information. A value of local specifies that the local file system is to be used. A value of centralized indicates that the information is to be obtained using the remote ISF Security Service. The default is local.

plugins:gsp:
  action_role_mapping_file

If a local policy store is being used, this variable must be set to indicate the location of the authorization mapping file. A file:// URL must be specified, and the file itself must reside in the Unix System Services file system. In addition, the XML data in this file must be encoded in UTF-8.
CHAPTER 17 | Securing the CICS Server Adapter

Common Security Considerations

Overview
This subsection provides details of common security considerations involved in using the CICS server adapter. These security considerations are relevant regardless of which protocol the server adapter is using to communicate with CICS.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
• Orbix SSL/TLS
• iSF integration
• Client authorization
• SAF plug-in
• Mapping client principal values to z/OS user IDs
• RACF program control

Orbix SSL/TLS
Orbix provides transport layer security (TLS) that enables secure connectivity over IIOP. TLS includes authentication, encryption, and message integrity. As with all Orbix servers, you can configure the CICS server adapter to use TLS. See the Mainframe Security Guide for details on securing CORBA applications with SSL/TLS.

iSF integration
The IONA security framework (iSF) provides a common security framework for all Orbix components in your system. This framework is involved at both the transport layer (using TLS) and the application layer (using the CORBA CSIv2 protocol and the Orbix generic security plug-in (GSP)). At the application level, one of the following authentication credentials can be passed, using the CSIv2 protocol:
• username/password/domain name
• propagated username
• Single sign-on (SSO) token

You can configure the CICS server adapter to use CSI/GSP support. See the Mainframe Security Guide for details on iSF and integration with an off-host Security service.
Client authorization

Authorization checks can be performed in the following ways:

- Using the GSP realm/role authorization functionality.
- Using the SAF plug-in, which provides Principal-based access control. Refer to “SAF plug-in” for more details.
- As part of the Orbix security mechanisms (for example, checking that the client has invoke rights to the server). Refer to the Mainframe Security Guide for more details.
- As part of the CICS security mechanisms (for example, checking that the user is allowed to run the specified program). Refer to “CICS Security Mechanisms when Using EXCI” on page 223 and “CICS Security Mechanisms when Using APPC” on page 230 for more details.

The client's Principal value is a string that is passed as part of an Orbix request that identifies the user on the client side. If Orbix SSL/TLS has not been configured, this value cannot be authenticated in any way. Sophisticated client-side users could fabricate this value, and therefore gain access to server-side resources that those users would not otherwise be allowed to use.

SAF plug-in

This Orbix plug-in provides optional Principal-based access control, similar to that found in IONA's Orbix 2.3-based mainframe solutions. A server might accept or reject incoming requests, based upon a CORBA::Principal value in the request header. The value is treated as a z/OS user ID and access is checked against an operation-specific SAF profile name. Access can therefore be controlled on a per-operation basis, or (using generic profiles) on a per-server basis. More details can be found in the orbixhlq.DOC PDS which is created as part of the software installation.

Mapping client principal values to z/OS user IDs

For the purposes of checking access to CICS resources, the only translation that the server adapter performs between the client Principal value and the z/OS user ID is to convert lowercase letters to uppercase. This means that users must have the same name on the client platform and z/OS.

RACF program control

If RACF program control is in use on your system, appropriate RACF definitions must be defined for Orbix. See your RACF manuals for details.
EXCI-Based Security Considerations

Overview

This section provides details of security considerations that are specific to using the EXCI-based server adapter. It describes the various security modes that the EXCI-based server adapter supports, with particular emphasis on how each mode affects the existing CICS security mechanisms.

In this section

The following topics are discussed in this section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CICS Security Mechanisms when Using EXCI</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for EXCI</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CICS Security Mechanisms when Using EXCI

Background to CICS security mechanisms for EXCI

CICS provides a number of mechanisms for securing access to CICS resources. The EXCI-based server adapter uses EXCI to transfer data into and out of a CICS region. It is therefore bound by the security restrictions that CICS places on it, such as link security, user security, and surrogate checks.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- Overview of CICS security mechanisms for EXCI
- MRO logon security
- MRO connect security
- Link security
- User security
- Further reading

Overview of CICS security mechanisms for EXCI

Figure 7 provides a graphical overview of the security mechanisms that are relevant to the operation of the EXCI-based server adapter.

Figure 7: CICS Security Mechanisms for EXCI-Based Server Adapter
MRO logon security

CICS EXCI is designed to allow non-CICS programs (such as the server adapter) to call a program running in a CICS region, without that program needing to be aware that it has been invoked from outside CICS. The program runs as if it were being linked to by another CICS program. EXCI accomplishes this by allowing each EXCI client program to act as a CICS pseudo-region. EXCI uses MRO logon security to ensure that a particular user has the authority to start this particular “pseudo-region”. The pseudo-region is named via the NETNAME attribute of the EXCI connection that is to be used.

You can use the plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name configuration item to specify the NETNAME of a particular EXCI SPECIFIC connection, which the server adapter uses for communicating with CICS. When this connection is first used, MRO logon security checks that the user ID under which the server adapter is running is allowed to use that connection. It does this by checking that the user ID has UPDATE access to the RACF FACILITY class profile named DFHAPPL.pipe_name. If the user ID does not have UPDATE access to this RACF FACILITY class profile, the server adapter cannot send data into the CICS region.

Note: This check is not made if the server adapter uses the EXCI GENERIC connection, which is used by default if you do not specify the plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name configuration item when starting the server adapter.

MRO connect security

MRO connect security is normally used to check the authorization of one CICS region to access resources in another region. Because CICS EXCI clients are treated as regions in their own right, this check applies to them also.

You can use the plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name configuration item to specify the CICS region to which to connect. Access rights to the CICS region that is specified with the plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name configuration item must therefore be checked. This is done by checking for READ access to a profile named DFHAPPL.applid in the RACF FACILITY class.
EXCI-Based Security Considerations

Link security

Link security checks are made to ensure that a user has access to all the CICS resources that it wants to use. In the case of the server adapter, the following checks can occur:

- If CICS transaction-attach security is enabled (that is, XTRAN=YES in the CICS system initialization parameters), access to the EXCI mirror transaction (which is specified via the plugins:cics_excl:default_tran_id configuration item) is checked via the RACF GCICSTRN and TCICSTRN resource classes.
- If CICS resource security is enabled (that is, RESSEC=ALWAYS in the CICS system initialization parameters or RESSEC(YES) in the mirror transaction definition), a whole range of checks can be made for access to resources used by the EXCI mirror transaction. This can include checking for access to the program to be run, if XPPT=YES is specified in the CICS system initialization parameters. It can also include checking for resources that program might use, such as files (if XFCT=YES), journals (if XJCT=YES), and other started transactions (if XPCT=YES).

Refer to the CICS-RACF Security Guide for more details about which CICS parameters need to be specified to protect the various kinds of resources.

- If CICS command-security checking is enabled, checks are made if the program issues system programming-type (SP-type) CICS commands. Refer to the CICS-RACF Security Guide for more details about these commands.

User security

User security performs the same checks as link security. User security checks are only made if the EXCI connection that the server adapter uses (whether GENERIC or SPECIFIC) is defined with the ATTACHSEC(IDENTIFY) attribute. Otherwise, user security is disabled.

Further reading

Refer to the following IBM manuals for full details about securing CICS in general, and EXCI clients in particular:

- SC33-1185 CICS/ESA CICS-RACF Security Guide
- SC33-1390 CICS/ESA External CICS Interface
CHAPTER 17 | Securing the CICS Server Adapter

Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for EXCI

Overview

The Orbix CICS server adapter supports two modes of operation with regard to security. The two modes are distinguished by which user identity is made available to CICS for MRO connect and link security checks.

This section discusses the following topics:
- “Determining the user ID” on page 226.
- “Default mode” on page 227.
- “use_client_principal mode” on page 227.
- “Choosing between the two security modes for EXCI” on page 227.
- “check_security_credentials iSF option” on page 228.

Determining the user ID

For every incoming client request, the CICS server adapter has two user IDs at its disposal:

- Its own user ID (that is, the ID under which the server adapter executable is running). This is always used for MRO logon security checks.
- The client user ID (that is, the Principal value converted to uppercase, and potentially truncated, to match the requirements of z/OS). This is always used for CICS user security checks (if they are enabled).

By default, the client user ID is the string value that is passed in the GIOP Principal field. For GIOP 1.2 or later versions, the CORBA::Principal field has been deprecated; however, as an alternative, Orbix can be configured to pass the Principal user ID in a special service context that is marshaled by the GIOP plug-in.

For installations that have been configured to use the Security service, the client user ID can be obtained from the CSI received credentials. If a user ID is not available in the security credentials, the GIOP Principal value is used instead. See “check_security_credentials iSF option” on page 228 for more details.

The Orbix CICS security mode that is chosen when starting the server adapter determines the mode used for CICS MRO connect and link security.
EXCI-Based Security Considerations

Default mode

In the default mode, it is the user ID of the server adapter itself that CICS uses to verify access to the region, the EXCI mirror transaction, and the other items already described. If CICS resource security is enabled (that is, RESSEC=YES on the mirror transaction definition, or RESSEC=ALWAYS in the CICS system initialization parameters), this can include a check for access to the program being invoked and the resources it uses. This means that the server adapter’s user ID must be given access to every CICS resource that any potential client can access. Otherwise, the incoming request fails, even though the client itself does have access to every CICS resource it needs.

Running in default mode means that the only security checks made against the client principal are user security checks for EXCI, and then only if user security is enabled.

use_client_principal mode

If you set the plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal configuration item to yes, the client Principal is used for the two types of checks. In this mode, the server adapter is more transparent, and security checking is similar to that of a user working from a 3270 terminal. Although the user now requires access to the CICS region (the connect check) and the mirror transaction (one of the link checks), the remaining resources that user needs access to should be the same as if that user had signed in from a terminal.

If the use_client_principal configuration item is specified, user security checks (which duplicate the link security checks) become redundant and should be disabled by setting ATTACHSEC (LOCAL) on the connection.

Choosing between the two security modes for EXCI

The following table summarizes which user ID is used for the CICS security checks in the two modes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>MRO Logon</th>
<th>MRO Connect</th>
<th>Link</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Server Adapter</td>
<td>Server Adapter</td>
<td>Server Adapter</td>
<td>Principal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal</td>
<td>Server Adapter</td>
<td>Principal</td>
<td>Principal</td>
<td>Principal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8: Summary of user IDs used for the CICS Security Checks
If you set the `plugins:cicsa:check_security_credentials` configuration item to `yes`, the CICS server adapter queries the CSI received credentials for a user ID before defaulting to the GIOP Principal value, on receiving a client request. Assuming that the CICS server adapter is running in `use_client_principal` mode, it then attempts to verify that this user ID is authorized to run the specified transaction.

When using the `check_security_credentials` iSF option, the client access ID that is used is one of the following (in order of priority):

1. The propagated user ID that is passed using the identity assertion mechanism.
2. The GSSUP token username
3. The GIOP Principal.

If a user ID is not available from any of these sources, the client request is rejected.

**Note:** The `check_security_credentials` iSF option only takes effect if the Orbix domain has been configured to use iSF. See the *Mainframe Security Guide* for more details.
APP- Based Security Considerations

Overview
This section provides details of security considerations that are specific to using the APPC-based server adapter. It describes the various security modes that the APPC-based server adapter supports, with particular emphasis on how each mode affects the existing CICS security mechanisms.

In this section
The following topics are discussed in this section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CICS Security Mechanisms when Using APPC</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for APPC</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CICS Security Mechanisms when Using APPC

Overview of APPC (LU 6.2 Protocol)

APPC is an implementation of the SNA LU 6.2 protocol for program-to-program communication across networks. An LU allocates a conversation to another LU and exchanges data with it. LU 6.2 defines a number of characteristics that can be established for a conversation. These include throughput, transactional behavior, and levels of security. APPC provides a set of programming interfaces that are used to construct programs that can send or receive LU 6.2 conversations.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Overview of CICS security mechanisms for APPC
- Characteristics of the APPC-based server adapter
- LU 6.2 conversation security levels
- Preventing unauthorized access
- Security for users already logged on
- Session-level verification
- APPCLU class profiles
- Restricting authorized use of LU names
- Setting bind security on CONNECTION resource
Overview of CICS security mechanisms for APPC

Figure 8 provides a graphical overview of the security mechanisms that are relevant to the operation of the APPC-based server adapter.

Characteristics of the APPC-based server adapter

The APPC-based server adapter has been constructed as an outbound LU. This means that it accepts data from CORBA clients on a TCP/IP network, sends that data on to the CICS LU via an LU 6.2 conversation, and then returns the data it receives from CICS back to the TCP/IP network.

LU 6.2 conversation security levels

The LU 6.2 protocol, of which APPC/MVS is an implementation, defines three levels of conversation security:

security_none No user identification is passed during the conversation. Access to resources on the receiving (inbound) side is limited to those that are universally available. In RACF terms, this means that the only resources used are those protected by profiles with a UACC other than NONE.
security_same

The identity of the initiating (outbound) user is passed when starting the conversation. On the receiving side, access is granted to all resources for which that user has appropriate permissions. Essentially, the program running on the receiving side is expected to have the same access privileges as if the user had logged in directly. No authentication of the user is performed, because the inbound side of the conversation is expected to pass an already verified flag, to indicate that the user's identity has already been checked.

The CICS server adapter attempts to use security_same when allocating its conversations with the APPC/CICS inbound transaction program. This allows the CICS transaction that is being scheduled to be associated with a particular user, so that existing CICS mechanisms can be used for resource-access checking and auditing. However, security_none might be used if VTAM refuses already verified connections to the LU. Refer to “Session-level verification” on page 234 for further details.

security_pgm

The initiating side sends a user identity value to be used on the receiving side. This is not necessarily the identity of the user initiating the conversation. The program on the receiving side is expected to run with the privileges of the specified user. For authentication purposes, the inbound side must also send an associated password value for the user, which is checked via RACF services.

A conversation using security_pgm is not possible with the CICS server adapter, because it has no access to passwords for its clients.

Note: Although the LU 6.2 protocol can be used for network communication, the CICS server adapter is only intended to be run on the same machine as the CICS region with which it is communicating.
Preventing unauthorized access

Generally, in a network environment, it is a ridiculous idea that a client should be authenticated by a server merely on the basis that it claims to have been already-verified. After all, it is possible for a sophisticated user on a workstation to forge any desired identity merely by fabricating the appropriate LU 6.2 protocol exchanges with the z/OS host. Therefore, to prevent such unauthorized access, z/OS provides a way to specify what information must be passed, to connect to a particular LU. This is done by specifying the \texttt{SECACPT=CONV} key in the \texttt{APPL} definition for the VTAM ACB associated with the LU.

When allocating a conversation with an LU defined in this way, the initiating LU must provide a user ID and password; the already-verified indicator is not accepted. If the required data is not passed, VTAM permits the connection, but the level of conversation security is reduced to \texttt{security_none}, and only universally available resources are accessible on the receiving side. Therefore, to get access to resources on the inbound side, the outbound user must provide a password.

Security for users already logged on

Consider the special case of a user already logged onto the host, who is using APPC/MVS to communicate with an LU on the same z/OS host. This is known as an \texttt{LU=LOCAL} conversation. In this case, the security information that is passed between the two sides for a \texttt{security_same} conversation is contained entirely within APPC/MVS itself: the outbound LU extracts the user's identity automatically for presentation to the inbound LU. There is no opportunity for the user to insert a fabricated identity. In such cases, there should be no need for APPC/MVS to enforce the password requirement: the user has already provided a password to gain access to the host in the first place.

When running on z/OS, the CICS server adapter is in a similar situation to a logged-on user. If it initiates conversations to the CICS LU under its own identity (the default mode), that identity has either been verified when the user that started the server adapter logged on (if the server adapter is submitted as a job or started interactively), or it has been assigned by the security product when the work is started by an operator (if the server adapter is run as a started task).
Even if the server adapter is initiating conversations under the identity of its clients, with the `plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal` configuration item set to `yes`, it can only do that if it is running under a user ID that has been given authority to do that. Additionally, it must have gone through at least one of the checks already mentioned, to run under that user ID.

Session-level verification

A secure but efficient APPC environment is, therefore, one that permits only `security_pgm` conversations from remote machines, but which allows `security_same` for `LU=LOCAL` conversations. In fact, prior to OS/390 V1R3, this is what APPC/MVS provided for LUs defined with `SECACPT=CONV`, because VTAM did not enforce the `SECACPT=CONV` specification for `LU=LOCAL` conversations. Since OS/390 V1R3, however, this is enforced\(^1\), so an alternate means of allowing `security_same` for `LU=LOCAL` conversations must be used. This is accomplished on z/OS, using session-level verification.

Session-level verification introduces the concept of a session key that can be used instead of a password for conversations between two specific LU names only. If `VERIFY=OPTIONAL` is coded on the `APPL` definition of the VTAM ACB for an LU, VTAM allows a `security_same` conversation to be established, provided the other LU can correctly respond to a demand for the session key that has been defined for these two LU names. On z/OS, these session keys are maintained by RACF in APPCLU class profiles.

APPCLU class profiles

APPCLU class profiles have names that take the following form:

```
*networkid.local-lu-name.partner-lu-name
```

They contain information to be used by APPC/MVS on one side of a conversation. Even if both LUs are on the same z/OS host, each LU examines a different profile, because each side of the conversation considers itself to be the local LU.

---

1. Refer to the IBM publication *GC28-1747 OS/390 V1R3.0 MVS Conversion Notebook* for more details.
For example, if an LU named OUTLU initiates a conversation with an LU named INLU that has SECACPT=CONV and VERIFY=OPTIONAL coded on its ACB, APPC/MVS on the inbound side determines the correct session key by consulting the networkid.INLU.OUTLU APPCLU profile. On the outbound side, when challenged for a session key, the initiating APPC/MVS consults the networkid.OUTLU.INLU profile, for the key value to return. VTAM, on the inbound side, permits the conversation to proceed as security_same, only if the key values in the two profiles match and CONVSEC(ALREADYV) is also coded in the inbound APPCLU profile.

Restricting authorized use of LU names

Additionally, because session-level verification is performed on the basis of LU name rather than on the basis of user name, it is necessary to restrict the users that are authorized to use those particular LU names. This is done via the RACF APPC.PORT class. By defining a profile in this class with the name of an LU, you can use its access list to control who can initiate or accept APPC conversations with that LU on this system.

Setting bind security on CONNECTION resource

The aim of the APPC-based server adapter is to integrate with CICS in such a way that all the existing mechanisms continue to work. For CICS and APPC, this is regulated by the setting of the bind security on the CONNECTION resource, as described in “Bind Time Security with APPC” on page 106.
Orbix CICS Server Adapter Security Modes for APPC

Overview
The APPC-based CICS server adapter supports two modes of operation with regard to security. These are discussed as follows:

- Default mode
- use_client_principal mode

Default mode
In the default mode, CICS and APPC use the server adapter’s user ID to verify access to the LU names, to the CICS region, to the CICS transaction, to databases, and so on. This means that the server adapter’s user ID must be given access to not just the APPC resources, but also to every CICS resource that any potential client can access. Otherwise, an incoming request might fail, even though the client itself has access to every CICS resource it needs.

use_client_principal mode
If you set the `plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal` configuration item to yes, the server adapter assumes the identity of the client before initiating the APPC conversation. This means that the client Principal is used for the APPC and CICS checks. In this mode, the server adapter is somewhat more transparent, and security checking is similar to that of a user working from a 3270 terminal. Although users now require access to the server adapter LU and the CICS LU, the remaining resources to which users need access should be the same as if they had signed in from a terminal.

The `plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal` mode works by having the server adapter use the services of z/OS to establish a thread-level security environment with the identity of the client for portions of its processing. This causes APPC and CICS to use that user ID for their checks. This does incur some extra overhead on each client request compared to the default mode.
CHAPTER 18

Mapping IDL Interfaces to CICS

This chapter provides information on how a CICS server adapter exposes CICS transactions as CORBA servers. It details the role that the mapping file plays in mapping CORBA operations and attributes for a given interface to a target transaction. It also details the role of the type information source (IFR or type_info store) in marshalling data from a client request.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Mapping File</th>
<th>page 238</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using the IFR as a Source of Type Information</td>
<td>page 244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information</td>
<td>page 254</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Mapping File

Overview

This section describes how the mapping file is used by the CICS server adapter. It also describes the contents of the file and how it can be generated using the Orbix IDL compiler.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Characteristics of the Mapping File</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating a Mapping File</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Characteristics of the Mapping File

Overview

This subsection describes the mapping file, its format, how it supports IDL attributes, and its relationship with type information sources. It discusses the following topics:

- Description
- Mapping file format
- Support for IDL attributes

Description

The mapping file is a simple text file that determines what interfaces and operations the CICS server adapter supports, and the transaction names to which it should map each operation. The file is read when the CICS server adapter starts, and can be written or re-read during the server adapter operation by using the MappingGateway interface or the itadmin mfa commands. Refer to "Making runtime modifications to mappings" on page 243 for more details.

Mapping file format

Each mapping entry in the file is specified as a tuple that specifies the following:

(interface name, operation name, CICS program/transaction name)

Tuples can span lines. All white space (including blanks embedded in names) is ignored.

In the tuples, if an IDL interface is scoped within a module or modules, the module name or names must then be included in the interface name. The module names are separated from each other and from the interface name with / characters. The interface name therefore has the following layout if it is scoped within two modules:

module_name/module_name/interface_name

For the EXCI plug-in, the third element in the tuple is an eight character program name. This is the program name of the Orbix server running inside CICS for this interface and operation. For the APPC plug-in, the third element in the tuple is a four character transaction name. This is the transaction name that is used by APPC to run the Orbix server inside CICS for this interface and operation.
Additionally, for the EXCI plug-in, you can also choose to specify the EXCI mirror transaction for each individual entry in the mapping file. In this case, each mapping in the file is specified as follows:

```plaintext
(interface_name, operation_name, program_name:mirror_tran_name)
```

For example, the following entry maps the set operation on the simple interface (see the Simple IDL below) to the SIMPLESV CICS program and ORX2 EXCI mirror transaction:

```plaintext
(Simple/SimpleObject, call_me, SIMPLESV:ORX2)
```

Ensure that there are no spaces before or after the colon that separates the CICS program name and mirror transaction name. If the mirror transaction name is not specified, which is the default situation, the server adapter uses the transaction name that you can specify with the `plugins:cics_exci:default_tran_id` configuration item when starting the server adapter.

### Support for IDL attributes

Attributes of IDL interfaces are supported by using `_get_attribute` and `_set_attribute` to read and write a particular attribute. For example, consider the Simple IDL:

```plaintext
module Simple {
    interface SimpleObject {
        void call_me();
    };
}
```

The following file maps the operation `call_me` on the `SimpleObject` interface to the CICS transaction named `SIMPLESV`:

```plaintext
(Simple/SimpleObject, call_me, SIMPLESV)
```

If the `SimpleObject` interface had a read-only attribute; for example, `something` (which it does not have in the sample application supplied by IONA), it needs an entry as follows in the mapping file:

```plaintext
(Simple/SimpleObject, _get_something, SIMPLESV)
```

Because the `something` attribute of the `SimpleObject` interface is specified as read-only in the IDL file, no `_set_something` operation is necessary.
Generating a Mapping File

## Overview

An IDL compiler plug-in is available, called `mfa`, that is used to generate CICS server adapter mapping files.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- Adapter mapping file versus other mapping files
- Sample IDL
- Generating mapping files on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Generating mapping files on native z/OS
- Making runtime modifications to mappings

## Adapter mapping file versus other mapping files

The CICS server adapter mapping file is completely unrelated to the mapping file used by the COBOL and PL/I IDL compilers. The CICS server adapter mapping file is used by the server adapter to select which transaction to run inside CICS, while the mapping file used by the COBOL and PL/I IDL compilers changes the names of specific items of source code generated by the IDL compiler.

## Sample IDL

The code samples for generating a CICS server adapter mapping file are based on Simple IDL:

```idl
module Simple {
    interface SimpleObject {
        void call_me();
    }
};
```
Generating mapping files on z/OS UNIX System Services

To generate a mapping file on z/OS UNIX System Services, run the following command:

```
idl -mfa:-tSIMPLES V simple.idl
```

The `-t` parameter specifies the program or transaction that is run inside CICS for each IDL operation. For EXCI, it is the eight-character program name. For APPC, it is the four-character transaction name.

Refer to “Mapping file format” on page 239 for details of the format of the mapping file generated.

Generating mapping files on native z/OS

The following is an example of JCL you can use to generate a mapping file on native z/OS:

```
//MAPFILE JOB {},
//      CLASS=A,
//      MSGCLASS=X,
//      MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
//      NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//      REGION=0M,
//      TIME=1440
//*
//      JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//      INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*
//*
//   Generate an operation mapping file CICS Server Adapter
//*
//  IDLMAP EXEC ORXIDL,
//      SOURCE=SIMPLE,
//      IDL=&ORBIX..DEMO.IDL,
//      IDL=ORBIX..DEMO.IDL,
//      IDL=ORXIDL
//  IDLMFA DD DISP=SHR,DSN=ORBIX..DEMO.CICS.MFAMAP
```

The `-t` parameter specifies the program or transaction that is run inside CICS for each IDL operation. For EXCI, it is the eight-character program name. For APPC, it is the four-character transaction name.

**Note:** If the `-mfa` option is specified to the Orbix IDL compiler, the `IDLMFA` DD statement defines the PDS used to store the generated CICS server adapter mapping file.
Refer to “Mapping file format” on page 239 for details of the format of the mapping file generated.

Making runtime modifications to mappings

A CICS server adapter caches mapping files internally during execution. This cache can be modified allowing mappings to be added, changed, or deleted. This functionality is exposed by the \texttt{itadmin mfa} command (refer to “Using the MappingGateway Interface” on page 272 for a complete list of \texttt{itadmin mfa} commands). The syntax is as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{mfa add} -interface \texttt{name} -operation \texttt{name} \texttt{<mapped value>}
\texttt{mfa change} -interface \texttt{name} -operation \texttt{name} \texttt{<mapped value>}
\texttt{mfa delete} -interface \texttt{name} -operation \texttt{name}
\end{verbatim}

The contents of this internal cache can be re-written (using \texttt{mfa save}) to file, to ensure that the mapping file is kept up-to-date. To refresh an internal cache from file, you can use \texttt{mfa reload} or \texttt{mfa switch}. The syntax is as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{mfa reload}
\texttt{mfa save [<mapping_file name>]}\texttt{mfa switch <mapping_file name>}
\end{verbatim}
Using the IFR as a Source of Type Information

Overview

This section describes how the IFR can be used as the source of type information by the CICS server adapter.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Using the IFR</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering IDL interfaces with the IFR</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informing CICS Server Adapter of a New Interface in the IFR</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using an IFR Signature Cache file</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction to Using the IFR

Overview
This subsection introduces how the IFR can be used to supply type information to the CICS server adapter. It details how interfaces can be registered with the IFR, and the operation of the server adapter when using the IFR. It also describes how an IFR cache can be employed to improve performance.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
• Description of the IFR
• Configuration of the IFR
• Operation of IFR when no IFR signature cache file is specified
• Steps for using the IFR

Description of the IFR
The IDL for the interfaces and operations specified in the mapping file must be available to the IFR server that the CICS server adapter uses. This information is required by the server adapter to marshal a request from a client. Therefore, IDL for supported interfaces must be added to the IFR. The steps for doing this are detailed below. To improve performance the IFR can be used with an optional IFR signature cache file.

Configuration of the IFR
If you want to use the IFR you must ensure that the appropriate configuration variables are set. Additionally, if you want to use an IFR signature cache file, the relevant configuration variable must also be set. Refer to “IFR signature cache file” on page 85 for more information.

Operation of IFR when no IFR signature cache file is specified
The server adapter contacts the IFR during start-up and attains operation signatures for operations defined in the mapping file. If an operation signature changes (for example, changing the return type from void to float) and the server adapter is notified (for example, if itadmin mfa refresh is called), it contacts the IFR to retrieve this modified signature.

If you want to use the IFR signature cache file refer to “Using an IFR Signature Cache file” on page 252.
### Steps for using the IFR

To use the IFR follow these steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Register IDL interfaces with the IFR. Refer to “Registering IDL interfaces with the IFR” on page 247 for further details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Inform the CICS server adapter that the contents of the IFR have been modified. Refer to “Informing CICS Server Adapter of a New Interface in the IFR” on page 250 for more details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Registering IDL interfaces with the IFR

Overview
This subsection describes how to register IDL interfaces with the IFR. It discusses the following topics:

- Sample IDL
- Registering IDL on native z/OS
- Registering IDL on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Specifying a -ORB argument

Sample IDL
The code samples for registering IDL with the IFR are based on the following `Simple::SimpleObject` interface in the `simple.idl` file:

```idl
module Simple {
    interface SimpleObject {
        void call_me();
    };
}
```
Registering IDL on native z/OS

To add IDL (for example, the SIMPLE IDL member) to the IFR on native z/OS, use the following JCL:

```
//ADDIFR JOB (),
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=X,
// MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
// NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
// REGION=0M,
// TIME=1440
/*
 // JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
 // INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
 /*
 /* Make the following changes before running this JCL:
 /*
 /* 1. Change 'SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@' to your configuration
 /*    domain name.
 /*
 /*    SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@'
 /*
 /* 2. Add an interface to the IFR
 /*
 //IDLMAP EXEC ORXIDL,
 // SOURCE=SIMPLE,
 // IDL=&ORBIX..DEMO.IDL,
 // IDLPARM='-R'
 //ITDOMAIN DD DSN=&ORBIXCFG(&DOMAIN),DISP=SHR
```

Registering IDL on z/OS UNIX System Services

To add IDL (for example, the simple.idl file) to the IFR on z/OS UNIX System Services, use the following command:

```
$ idl -R simple.idl
```
Specifying a -ORB argument

When registering IDL with the IFR, the `idl -R` command invokes an IDL back end that acts as a CORBA client to the IFR server. The client sends the IDL definitions by invoking CORBA calls on the IFR. Therefore, you might want to specify an ORB argument that can be used in the client's `ORB_init()` call before it communicates with the IFR. For example, to specify a different Orbix domain name on z/OS UNIX System Services, enter the following command:

```
idl -R:-ORBdomain_name=domain2
```
Informing CICS Server Adapter of a New Interface in the IFR

Overview
After you add an interface to the IFR, the CICS server adapter must be notified for the updates to take effect. If adding support for a new interface or operation, the `itadmin mfa add` command can be used. In addition to creating a new binding between operation and CICS transaction in the mapping file, it also causes the CICS server adapter to contact the IFR to retrieve the operation signature for the new operation.

This subsection discusses the following:

- Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on native z/OS
- Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Notifying the server adapter of modifications to the IFR

Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on native z/OS
To inform the CICS server adapter that the `SimpleObject` interface (see “Sample IDL” on page 241 for an example) has been added to the IFR on native z/OS, use the following JCL:

```bash
//ADDMFA   JOB   (),
//         CLASS=A,
//         MSGCLASS=X,
//         MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
//         NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//         REGION=0M,
//         TIME=1440
//*
//         JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//         INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*
//* Make the following changes before running this JCL:
//*
//* 1. Change 'SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@' to your configuration domain name.
//*
//*      SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@'
//*```
Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on z/OS UNIX System Services

To inform the CICS server adapter that the SimpleObject interface (see “Sample IDL on page 241 for an example) has been added to the IFR on z/OS UNIX System Services, use the following command:

```
$ itadmin -ORBname iona_services.cicsa mfa add -interface Simple.SimpleObject -operation call_me SIMPLESV
```

Notifying the server adapter of modifications to the IFR

The itadmin mfa refresh command is used to notify the CICS server adapter that an already supported operation signature has changed. It causes the CICS server adapter to contact the IFR and retrieve the updated operation signature and place this in its internal cache.

You can also use refreshInterface() or refreshOperation(). These functions are available via the MappingGateway interface and can be used to refresh the server adapter's internal cache of operation signatures by contacting the IFR. This requires that a corresponding entry exist for the operation(s) in the mapping file.

Using the IFR as a Source of Type Information

```c
/* Add an interface mapping to the CICS Adapter */

//CICSADD EXEC ORXADMIN,
// PPARM='-ORBname iona_services.cicsa'
//SYSIN DD *
mfa add /
   -interface Simple/SimpleObject \
   -operation call_me \
   SIMPLESV
/*
//ITDOMAIN DD DSN=SHR,DSN=&ORBIXCFG(&DOMAIN),DISP=SHR
```
Using an IFR Signature Cache file

**Overview**
This subsection describes how an IFR signature cache file can be used in conjunction with the IFR to improve performance of the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Prerequisites to using the IFR signature cache file
- First run of the server adapter after configuration
- Subsequent runs of the server adapter
- Runtime modifications to the IFR
- Updating an IFR signature cache file

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prerequisites to using the IFR signature cache file</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Before you use a signature cache file you must specify the name of the signature cache file you want to use, in the plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache configuration item in the iona_services:cicsa configuration scope. Refer to &quot;IFR signature cache file&quot; on page 85 for more details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First run of the server adapter after configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When the server adapter is started after this configuration item is set, a new signature cache file is generated with this name, and the contents of the IFR are saved to it. If an operation signature is not available for an operation defined to the CICS server adapter via the mapping file, a warning message is output. For example, the warning message for an IDL interface called Simple/SimpleObject with a single operation called call_me is similar to the following:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
Tue, 03 Dec 2002 12:35:30.0000000 [MYMACHINE:16777601] (IT_MFA:100) W - synchronization problem occurred for mapping (Simple/SimpleObject,call_me) - unable to obtain type information for the operation
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsequent runs of the server adapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With subsequent runs of the server adapter the IFR is not contacted during start-up. Instead it reads the list of operation signatures directly from the signature cache file. This should lead to an improvement in how long it takes to start the server adapter, especially if you need to start multiple server adapters simultaneously. This means the server adapters can be ready and available more quickly for client requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using the IFR as a Source of Type Information

Runtime modifications to the IFR

During runtime, the CICS server adapter can contact the IFR to load or refresh an operation entry. Upon shutdown, the server adapter updates the signature cache file with the operation signatures it has used.

**Note:** The IFR signature cache file is only ever accessed twice. First, it is accessed in read mode during start-up. This boosts performance by preventing the IFR being contacted initially. Second, it is accessed in write mode during shutdown. This dumps the operation signatures used by the server adapter to a signature cache file, so that this can be used when the server adapter is restarted.

Updating an IFR signature cache file

If type information subsequently changes in the IFR, you can update the information in the signature cache file using `refreshInterface()` or `refreshOperation()`.

If you are using the IFR signature cache file, either or both of these can be used on the `MappingGateway` interface, to consult the IFR and update the cached IFR operation signatures in-memory in the CICS server adapter with a specified interface or operation (or both).
Using type_info store as a Source of Type Information

Overview

This section describes how a type_info store can be used as the source of type information by the CICS server adapter.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Using a type_info Store</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generating type_info Files using the IDL Compiler</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informing CICS Server Adapter of a new type_info Store File</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction to Using a type_info Store

Overview

This section describes the type_info store in terms of how the Orbix IDL compiler can be used to generate these files, the operation of the server adapter when using a type_info store, and how the store can be updated.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Description
- Configuration
- Operation of CICS server adapter using type_info stores
- Steps for using a type_info store

Description

The type_info store is one method of supplying IDL interface information to the CICS server adapter. It is an alternative approach to the IFR, and uses a file-based approach to represent operation signatures. The CICS server adapter can access these files at start-up and runtime, to obtain operation signatures, which it requires to marshal data from the CORBA client.

Note: If you are using a type_info store, the CICS server adapter does not require the IFR. This means that a CICS server adapter that is using a type_info store can be run in standalone mode, by configuring it to run in direct persistent mode.

Configuration

If you want to use a type_info source you must ensure that the appropriate configuration items are set. Refer to “type_info store” on page 86 for more information.

Operation of CICS server adapter using type_info stores

The Orbix IDL compiler generates type_info files. When the CICS server adapter is started it accesses the type_info store and, for all operations for which an operation-to-transaction mapping entry exists, it loads the operation signatures into an internal cache. These operation signatures are required by the CICS server adapter to unmarshal operation arguments from a client request, and to marshal the response back.
During runtime, the type_info store can be updated dynamically (for example, to add support for a new interface, or to reflect a change in one or more operation signatures). This simply requires generating a new type_info file and then requesting the CICS server adapter to refresh its internal operation signature cache with the latest version in the type_info store.

### Steps for using a type_info store

To use a type_info store do the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Use the IDL compiler to generate (or regenerate for subsequent additions or other modifications) a type_info file for IDL. Refer to &quot;Generating type_info Files using the IDL Compiler&quot; on page 257 for further details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Inform the CICS server adapter of a new or modified interface. Refer to “Informing CICS Server Adapter of a new type_info Store File” on page 259 for further details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Generating type_info Files using the IDL Compiler

#### Overview
This subsection describes the process of generating type_info store files. It discusses the following topics:
- Sample IDL
- On z/OS UNIX System Services
- On native z/OS

#### Sample IDL
The code samples for generating a type_info file are based on Simple IDL:

```idl
module Simple {
    interface SimpleObject {
        void call_me();
    }
};
```

#### On z/OS UNIX System Services
To generate a type_info file on z/OS UNIX System Services for the Simple IDL, run the IDL compiler as follows:

```
idl -mfa:-inf simple.idl
```

This generates a type_info file named `simpleB.inf`.

**Note:** By default, the mfa backend generates type_info files with a suffix of B. This can be modified by editing the MFAMappings scope in `orbix.hlq.CONFIG(IDL)`.
To generate a type_info file on native z/OS for the Simple IDL, submit the following JCL to run the IDL compiler:

```jcl
//ADDMA JOB (),
//   CLASS=A,
//   MSGCLASS=X,
//   MSGLEVEL={1,1},
//   NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//   REGION=0M,
//   TIME=1440
//*
//   JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//   INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*/
//*
//  /* Add an interface mapping to the CICS Server Adapter
//  */
//IDLCL EXEC ORXIDL,
//   SOURCE=SIMPLE,
//   IDL=&ORBIX..DEMO.IDL,
//   COPYLIB=&ORBIX..DEMO.CICS.CBL.COPYLIB,
//   IMPL=&ORBIX..DEMO.CICS.CBL.SRC,
//   IDLPARM=’-mfa:=-inf’
//IDLTYPEI DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&ORBIX..DEMO.TYPEINFO
```

This generates a type_info file named `orbixhlq.DEMO.TYPEINFO(SIMPLEB)`. 

**Note:** By default, the mfa backend generates type_info files with a suffix of B. This can be modified by editing the MFAMappings scope in `orbixhlq.CONFIG(IDL)`. 

**Note:** If the `-mfa:=-inf` option is specified to the Orbix IDL compiler, the `IDLTYPEI DD` statement defines the PDS used to store the generated type_info file.
Informing CICS Server Adapter of a new type_info Store File

Overview

After you add a file to the type_info store, the CICS server adapter must be notified for the updates to take effect. If adding support for a new interface or operation, the `itadmin mfa add` command can be used. In addition to creating a new binding between operation and CICS transaction in the mapping file, it also causes the CICS server adapter to access the type_info store to retrieve the operation signature for the new operation.

This subsection discusses the following:

- Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on native z/OS
- Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Notifying the server adapter of modifications to the type_info store

Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on native z/OS

To inform the CICS server adapter that the `SimpleObject` interface (see “Sample IDL” on page 257 for an example) has been added to the type_info store on native z/OS, use the following JCL:

```plaintext
//ADDMFA   JOB   (),
//         CLASS=A,
//         MSGCLASS=X,
//         MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
//         NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//         REGION=0M,
//         TIME=1440
//*
//         JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//         INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*
//* Make the following changes before running this JCL:
//*
//* 1. Change 'SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@' to your configuration
//*     domain name.
//*
//*  SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@'
//*
//* Add an interface mapping to the CICS Adapter
//*
```
Informing the server adapter of a new IDL interface on z/OS UNIX System Services

To inform the CICS server adapter that the SimpleObject interface (see “Sample IDL” on page 257 for an example) has been added to the type_info store on z/OS UNIX System Services, use the following command:

```
$ itadmin -ORBname iona_services.cicsa mfa add -interface Simple/SimpleObject -operation call_me SIMPLESV
```

Notifying the server adapter of modifications to the type_info store

The itadmin mfa refresh command is used to notify the CICS server adapter that an already supported operation signature has changed. (Refer to “Using the MappingGateway Interface” on page 272 for a complete list of itadmin mfa commands.) It causes the CICS server adapter to access the type_info store and retrieve the updated operation signature and place this in its internal cache.

You can also use refreshInterface() or refreshOperation(). These functions are available via the MappingGateway interface and can be used to refresh the server adapter’s internal cache of operation signatures by accessing the type_info store. This requires that a corresponding entry exists for the operation(s) in the mapping file.
CHAPTER 19

Using the CICS Server Adapter

This chapter provides information on running and using the CICS server adapter. It provides details on how to start and stop the server adapter. It provides details on how to use the server adapter to act as a dynamic bridge to pass IDL-based requests into CICS. It describes how to use the MappingGateway interface of the server adapter. It also explains how to add a portable interceptor to the server adapter and gather accounting information in the server adapter.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preparing the Server Adapter</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the Server Adapter</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopping the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Multiple Server Adapters Simultaneously</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the MappingGateway Interface</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locating CICS Server Adapter Objects Using itmfaloc</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Portable Interceptor to the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling the GIOP Request Logger Interceptor</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gathering Accounting Information in the Server Adapter</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exporting Object References at Runtime</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preparing the Server Adapter

Overview
This section describes what needs to be done to run the server adapter in prepare mode. It discusses the following topics:

- Prerequisites to running the server adapter in prepare mode
- Running the CICS server adapter in prepare mode
- Sample JCL to run the CICS server adapter in prepare mode
- Location of CICS server adapter IORs
- The IT_MFA IOR
- The IT_MFA_CICSRAW IOR
- Sample configuration file
- Running the CICS server adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

Prerequisites to running the server adapter in prepare mode
If you are using a type_info store as the type information source (as is the default), you can run the CICS server adapter in standalone mode, if you wish. This requires setting the CICS server adapter to run in direct persistent mode. In direct persistent mode, the CICS server adapter does not require the other Orbix Mainframe services.

If you are using the IFR as the type information source, you must first run the locator, node daemon, and IFR in prepare mode. Ensure that these are prepared as described in the Mainframe Installation Guide and that they are running.

Additionally, if you are running the server adapter in prepare mode by using the batch prepare JOB, ensure that the initial_references:IT_cicsraw:plugin configuration item is set to cics_exci. This avoids non-zero return codes being issued by the prepare JOB.

Running the CICS server adapter in prepare mode
Run the server adapter in prepare mode. This generates IORs and writes them to a file, which you can then include in your configuration file. A job to run the CICS server adapter in prepare mode is provided in orbixhlq.JCLLIB(PREPCICA).
Sample JCL to run the CICS server adapter in prepare mode

This JCL contains the default high-level qualifier, so change it to reflect the proper value for your installation:

```plaintext
//PREPICA JOB (),
//   CLASS=A,
//   MSGCLASS=X,
//   MSGLEVEL={1,1},
//   NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//   REGION=0M,
//   TIME=1440
//*
//   JCLLIB ORDER=({HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB})
//   INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//   SET CICSHLQ=CICSTS13
//*
//  * Prepare the Orbix CICS Adapter
//  *
//  * Make the following changes before running this JCL:
//  *
//  * 1. If you ran DEPLOY1 (or DEPLOYT) to configure in a domain
//  *     other than the default, please ensure that dataset
//  *     &ORBIXCFG(ORBARGS) has the domain name used by DEPLOY1
//  *     (or DEPLOYT).
//  *
//  //PREPARE EXEC PROC=ORXG,
//  //   PROGRAM=ORXICSA,
//  //   LOADLIB=&CICSHLQ..SDFHEXCI,
//  //   PPARM='prepare -publish_to_file=DD:ITCONFIG(IORCICSA)'
//  //TYPEINFO DD DUMMY
//  //MFAMAPS DD DUMMY
//  //ORBARGS DD DSN=&ORBIXCFG(ORBARGS),DISP=SHR
//  */
//  * Update configuration domain with CICS Adapter’s IOR
//  */
//  //ITCFG1 EXEC ORXADMIN
//SYSIN DD *
variable modify \
   -type string \n   -value --from_file:3 //DD:ITCONFIG(IORCICSA) \n   LOCAL_MFA_CICS_REFERENCE
/*
//ORBARGS DD DSN=&ORBIXCFG(ORBARGS),DISP=SHR
/*
//  * Update configuration domain with CICSRAW IOR
//  */
```
Preparing the Server Adapter

Location of CICS server adapter IORs

When complete, the IORs for the server adapter should be in `orbixhlq.CONFIG(IORCICSA)`. The file contains two IORs.

The IT_MFA IOR

One IOR is for IT_MFA. This is the IOR for the server adapter `MappingGateway` interface. The `orbixhlq.JCLLIB(PREPCICA)` JCL copies this IOR into the `LOCAL_MFA_CICS_REFERENCE` configuration item, which is found in the `orbixhlq.CONFIG PDS`, in the member that corresponds to your configuration domain name. (The default configuration domain name is `DEFAULT@`.) This IOR is used by `itadmin` to contact the correct server adapter. Refer to “Using the MappingGateway Interface” on page 272 for more details.

The IT_MFA_CICSRAW IOR

The other IOR is for IT_MFA_CICSRAW. This IOR is only produced if the EXCI plug-in is used. It is not produced if the APPC plug-in is used. This is the IOR for the CICS server adapter `cicsraw` interface. This IOR should be made available to client programs of the server adapter that want to use the `cicsraw` interface. Refer to the “The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface” on page 44 for more details.

Sample configuration file

The following is an extract from a working configuration file for you to compare your file with.

```
//ITCFG2   EXEC ORXADMIN
//SYSIN DD *
 variable modify \
   -type string \
   -value --from_file:6 //DD:ITCONFIG(IORCICSA) \
   initial_references:IT_MFA_CICSRAW:reference
/*
 //ORBARGS  DD DSN=ORBIXCFG(ORBARGS),DISP=SHR
```

Note: The position of the first quote is moved to the next line, directly preceding the start of the IOR. (Ellipses denote text omitted for the sake of brevity.)
Running the CICS server adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

You can also run the CICS server adapter in prepare mode from the UNIX System Services prompt. The command is as follows:

```
$ itcicsa -ORBname iona_services.cicsa prepare
```

The two IORs for IT_MFA and IT_MFA_CICSRAW are then displayed on the console. You can copy them to the appropriate places as described above. However, in general, it might be easier to obtain the IT_MFA IOR, using the `orbixhq.JCLLIB(PREPICA)` JCL. This is because it automatically copies the IOR into the PDS-based configuration file.
Starting the Server Adapter

Overview

This section describes how to start the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Starting the server adapter on native z/OS
- Starting the server adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Adapter logging information

Starting the server adapter on native z/OS

In a native z/OS environment, you can start the CICS server adapter in any of the following ways:

- As a batch job.
- Using a TSO command.
- As a started task (by converting the batch job into a started task).

The default CICS server adapter is the server adapter whose configuration is defined directly in the iona_services.cicsa scope, and not in some sub-scope of this. The following is sample JCL to run the default CICS server adapter:

```
//CICSA JOB (),
//   CLASS=A,
//   MSGCLASS=X,
//   MSGLEVEL={1,1},
//   NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//   REGION=0M,
//   TIME=1440
//*
//   JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//   INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//   SET CICSHLQ=CICSTS13
//*
/** Run the Orbix CICS Adapter
/**
/* Make the following changes before running this JCL:
/*
Starting the server adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

On z/OS UNIX System Services, you can start the CICS server adapter from the shell. The command to run the default CICS server adapter is similar to the following if you have an `initial_references:IT_MFA:reference` entry in the root scope (that is, not inside any {} brackets) of your configuration file:

```
$ itcicsa
```

The command to run extra server adapters is similar to the following:

```
$ itcicsa -ORBname iona_services.cicsa.gateway2
```

Refer to “Running Multiple Server Adapters Simultaneously” on page 270 for more details on running multiple server adapters.

Adapter logging information

When the adapter is started, if a sufficient logging level is enabled, some basic information is displayed on how the particular adapter is configured, including which region it is going to connect with. If client principal support is not enabled, the logged information includes the user ID under which the server adapter is running. This is normally the TSO/E user ID running the adapter. However, if a `USERIDALLIASTABLE` is in use in z/OS UNIX System Services, the user ID that is displayed instead is the alias associated with the user ID. Regardless of which user ID (that is, TSO/E or alias) is displayed, for z/OS it is the same user ID, so it does not affect the functionality of the server adapter.
### Stopping the CICS Server Adapter

#### Overview
This section describes how to stop the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:
- Stopping the adapter via the admin interface
- Stopping the adapter on native z/OS
- Stopping the adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

#### Stopping the adapter via the admin interface
The Orbix administrative interface is used to configure and manage Orbix installations. This interface can be invoked via the ORXADMIN JCL on z/OS or the itadmin shell command on z/OS UNIX System Services. As with the other Orbix services, you can stop the CICS server adapter by issuing an admin stop command that uses the appropriate admin plug-in (in this case, the mfa plug-in). For example, the format of the command is as follows on z/OS UNIX System Services:

```
% itadmin mfa stop
```

This instructs the adapter to shut down.

#### Stopping the adapter on native z/OS
To stop a CICS server adapter job on native z/OS, issue the `STOP (P)` operator command from the console.

#### Stopping the adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services
To stop a CICS server adapter process on z/OS UNIX System Services, use the `kill` command or, if the adapter is running in an active rlogin shell, press `Ctrl-C`. 
CHAPTER 19 | Using the CICS Server Adapter

Running Multiple Server Adapters Simultaneously

Overview

This section describes how to run multiple server adapters simultaneously. It discusses the following topics:

- Running multiple server adapters simultaneously
- Using itadmin on z/OS UNIX System Services

Running multiple server adapters simultaneously

To run multiple CICS server adapters perform the following steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Set up a configuration scope for each server adapter (for example, the gateway2 scope) in the partial configuration file. (Refer to the example in “A CICS Server Adapter Sample Configuration” on page 60.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Set up a corresponding configuration scope for usage with the admin utility. For example, add a gateway2 sub-scope to the iona_utilities.cicsa scope in the configuration file, and add the following configuration setting under it: initial_references:IT_MFA:reference=%{LOCAL_MFA_CICS_REFERENCE2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Specify a unique cicsapoa_prefix variable for each server adapter if you are using the locator (indirect persistent). This is a good idea anyway, even for direct persistent server adapters, because the IORs are easier to distinguish when examined with the iordump utility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Set the unique port number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Running Multiple Server Adapters Simultaneously

Using itadmin on z/OS UNIX System Services

It might be useful to run in shell mode, so that you do not have to type the long ORBname in the JCL's itadmin parameter. To run itadmin on z/OS UNIX System Services:

$ itadmin -ORBname iona_utilities.cicsa.gateway2
  % mfa list
  % mfa resolve .....

Note: When using JCL to issue itadmin commands on native z/OS, include the full ORBname in the JCL's itadmin parameter.
## Using the MappingGateway Interface

### Overview

The MappingGateway interface is used to control a running CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Uses of the MappingGateway interface
- Access to the MappingGateway interface
- Selecting a specific server adapter

### Uses of the MappingGateway interface

You can use the MappingGateway interface to list the transaction mappings that the server supports, to add or delete individual interfaces and operations, or to alter the transaction to which an operation is mapped. You can use it to read a new mapping file, or write existing mappings to a new file.

Additionally, the MappingGateway interface provides the means by which IIOP clients can invoke on the exported interfaces. Using the `resolve` operation, an IOR can be retrieved for any exported interface. This IOR can then be used directly by IIOP clients, or registered with an OrbixNames server as a way of publishing the availability of the interface.

### Access to the MappingGateway interface

The MappingGateway interface is provided both via the `itadmin` interface and as an IDL interface. The IDL for the MappingGateway interface is provided with the other IDL in the installation and can be used by client applications to invoke operations on the MappingGateway interface.

Access to the MappingGateway interface, using `itadmin`, is provided as a plug-in. This plug-in is selected with the `mfa` keyword. This `itadmin mfa` plug-in is an IONA-supplied client of the MappingGateway interface and is provided to make it easier to access the MappingGateway interface. For example, to obtain a list of all the operations provided by the `itadmin mfa` plug-in, issue the following command (from the UNIX System Services shell or via JCL on native z/OS):

```
$ itadmin mfa -help
```
Using the MappingGateway Interface

The output looks as follows:

```
mfa list
   add  -interface <name> -operation <name> <mapped value>
change -interface <name> -operation <name> <mapped value>
delete -interface <name> -operation <name>
resolve <interface name>
refresh [-operation <name>] <interface name>
reload
save  [<mapping_file name>]
switch <mapping_file name>
stats
resetcon
stop
```

Items shown in angle brackets (<...>) must be supplied and items shown in square brackets ([...]) are optional. Module names form part of the interface name and are separated from the interface name with a / character.

The parameter after mfa specifies the operation to be invoked. The options are:

```
list       This prints a list of the (interface, operation, and name) mappings that the CICS server adapter currently supports.
add        This allows you to add a new mapping.
change     This allows you to change the transaction to which an existing operation is mapped.
delete     This allows you to get the CICS server adapter to stop exporting a particular operation.
resolve    This prints a stringified IOR for the object in the server adapter that supports the specified interface. This IOR string can then be given to clients of that interface, or stored in an OrbixNames server. The IOR produced contains the TCP/IP port number for the locator if the CICS server adapter is running with direct persistence set to no; otherwise, it contains the CICS server adapter’s port number.
refresh    This causes the CICS server adapter to obtain up-to-date type information for the specified operation. If you omit the operation argument, all operations being mapped in the specified interface are refreshed.
```
To select a specific server adapter, provide the `ORBname` for the server adapter on a request. For example, to obtain the IOR for the `SimpleObject` interface, use the following command:

```
.itadmin -ORBname iona_utilities.cicsa mfa resolve
Simple/SimpleObject
```
Locating CICS Server Adapter Objects Using itmfaloc

Overview

The CICS server adapter maintains object references that identify CORBA server programs running in CICS. A client must obtain an appropriate object reference to access the target server. The itmfaloc URL resolver plug-in supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation facilitates and simplifies this task.1

This section discusses the following topics:

- Locating CICS servers using IORs
- Locating objects using itmfaloc
- Format of an itmfaloc URL
- What happens when itmfaloc is used
- Example of using itmfaloc

Locating CICS servers using IORs

One way of obtaining an object reference for a target server, managed by the CICS server adapter, is to retrieve the IOR via the itadmin utility. This calls the resolve() method on the server adapter's MappingGateway interface and returns a stringified IOR. For example, to retrieve an IOR for the SimpleObject IDL interface, issue the following command:

```
  itadmin mfa resolve Simple/SimpleObject
```

After it has been retrieved, the IOR can be distributed to the client and used to invoke on the target server running inside CICS.

Locating objects using itmfaloc

In some cases, the use of itadmin and the need to persist stringified IORs is not very manageable, and thus a more dynamic approach is desirable. The itmfaloc resolver is designed to provide an alternative approach. It follows a similar scheme to that of the corbaloc URL technique. (Refer to the CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++ for more information.)

1. This plug-in is not yet available on other Orbix platforms.
In this way, the Orbix CORBA client can specify a very simple URL format which identifies the target service required. This text string can therefore be used programmatically in place of the rather cumbersome stringified IOR representation.

**Format of an itmfaloc URL**

An itmfaloc URL is a string of the format:

```plaintext
itmfaloc:<InterfaceName>
```

In the preceding example, `<InterfaceName>` represents the fully scoped name of the IDL interface implemented by the target CICS server, as specified in the server adapter mapping file.

**What happens when itmfaloc is used**

When an itmfaloc URL is used in place of an IOR, the Orbix client application contacts the server adapter to obtain an object reference for the desired CICS server. The itmfaloc URL string only encodes the interface name, not the server adapter’s location. To establish the initial connection to the server adapter, the `IT_MFA:initial_references` configuration item is used.

If multiple server adapters are deployed, it is imperative that the client application specifies the correct `IT_MFA:initial_references` setting, to talk to the correct CICS server adapter. This can be achieved by specifying the appropriate ORBName which represents the particular configuration scope; for example, `-ORBname iona_utilities.cicsa`.

If the client application successfully connects to the server adapter, it then calls the `resolve()` operation on the `MappingGateway` object reference, thus retrieving an object reference for the target server managed by the CICS server adapter.
Example of using itmfaloc

The simple demonstration client code that is shipped with Orbix uses a file-based mechanism to access the target server's stringified IOR. If the target server resides in CICS, an alternative approach is to specify an itmfaloc URL string in the string-to-object call:

| itmfaloc:Simple/SimpleObject |

The relevant Orbix APIs are:

- `str2obj` (PL/I)
- `STRTOOBJ` (COBOL)
- `string_to_object()` (C++)
Adding a Portable Interceptor to the CICS Server Adapter

Overview

This section describes how to add a portable interceptor (or multiple interceptors) to the server adapter. This can be used to perform the usual functions available in portable interceptors. Refer to the CORBA Programmer’s Reference, C++ and CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++ for more details on portable interceptors. Additionally, a portable interceptor can be used to manipulate the client principal that the CICS server adapter receives from the client. It can also be used to inspect the operation arguments sent in the request.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Developing the Portable Interceptor</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling the Portable Interceptor</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loading the Portable Interceptor into the CICS Server Adapter</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Developing the Portable Interceptor

Overview

A portable interceptor should be developed as described in the CORBA Programmer's Guide, C++. For the server adapter, only server-side interceptors are of interest, because the CICS server adapter is a CORBA server.

This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Server adapter portable interceptor sample locations
- Contents of the ORB plug-in implementation
- Contents of the ORB initializer implementation
- Contents of the server interceptor implementation
- Server interceptor sample code
- Server interceptor sample code explanation

Server adapter portable interceptor sample locations

An example of a portable interceptor framework for use in the server adapter is provided in orbixhlq.DEMO.CPP.SRC and orbixhlq.DEMO.CPP.H. The header file members are ORBINITI and SRVINTRC. The source file members are PLUGIN, ORBINITI, and SRVINTRC.

For a z/OS UNIX System Services installation, the demonstration is located in $IT_PRODUCT_DIR/asp/Version/demos/corba/pdk/security_pi. The header files are located in orb_initializer_impl.h and server_interceptor_impl.h. The implementation files are located in plugin.cxx, orb_initializer_impl.cxx and server_interceptor_impl.cxx.

The portable interceptor is packaged as a standard ORB plug-in, to enable it to be loaded by an existing Orbix server (in this case, the CICS server adapter).

Contents of the ORB plug-in implementation

The ORB plug-in implementation contains code to register this DLL as an ORB plug-in. The ORB plug-in implementation also contains code in its ORB_init() method to register the portable interceptor's ORB initializer object with the ORB. The ORB plug-in mechanism is used here to enable the server adapter to load this DLL when the adapter is started. (See
“Loading the Portable Interceptor into the CICS Server Adapter” on page 286.) Sample source is provided in the PLUGIN member on z/OS and in the plugin.cxx file on z/OS UNIX System Services.

Contents of the ORB initializer implementation

The ORB initializer implementation contains code to register the server request interceptor with the ORB. Refer to the CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++ for details on how to implement an ORB initializer. The initializer is registered in the IT_Security_PlugIn class (that is, the ORB plug-in implementation). Sample source is provided in the ORBINITI members on z/OS, and in the orb_initializer.h and orb_initializer.cxx files on z/OS UNIX System Services.

Contents of the server interceptor implementation

The server request interceptor implementation illustrates how you can intercept the incoming CORBA request and check the following:

- **Principal**—You can inspect the GIOP principal value, and potentially modify this principal value before it is subsequently used by the server adapter. (See “Activating Client Principal Support” on page 125 for more details.) This is done by invoking on the GIOP Current API.

- **Arguments**—You can inspect the operation arguments that have been sent in the request. This is done by invoking on the server adapter’s IT_MFA Current API.

To achieve this functionality, the interceptor only implements the receive_request() interception point. This is the point at which both the principal and operation arguments has been read in from the GIOP request message. Sample source is available in the SRVINTRC dataset members on z/OS, and in the server_interceptor_impl.h and server_interceptor_impl.cxx files on z/OS UNIX System Services.
The Current API is specific to the server adapter and enables PDK application-level code to access the operation arguments in the form of a sequence of octets. The IDL is located in your Orbix Mainframe installation at `orbixhlq.INCLUDE.ORBIX@PD.IDL(MFA@CUR)` on z/OS or at `install-dir/asp/6.x/idl/orbix_pdk/mfa_current.idl` on z/OS UNIX System Services.

The Current API can only be used to inspect arguments for a mapped operation. This means that requests targeting the cicsraw interface or the MappingGateway interface cause a `CORBA::BAD_INV_ORDER` system exception to be thrown. A `CORBA::BAD_INV_ORDER` exception is also thrown if the Current API is invoked from within an unsuitable interception point. The `request_message_body()` operation must be called in the `receive_request()` interception point. The `reply_body_length()` operation, which returns the length of the reply returned from CICS, must be called from the `send_reply()` interception point.

## Server interceptor sample code

The `receive_request()` method makes calls to inspect the GIOP principal and the operation arguments (if appropriate). The following code example focuses on the GIOP principal checking:

### Example 11: Sample Server Interceptor code  (Sheet 1 of 2)

```c++
void Demo_ServerInterceptorImpl::inspect_giop_principal(
    PortableInterceptor::ServerRequestInfo_ptr  ri
) IT_THROW_DECL((
    CORBA::SystemException,
    PortableInterceptor::ForwardRequest
))
{
    CORBA::OctetSeq_var received_val_binary = m_current->received_principal();
    if (received_val_binary->length() != 0)
    {
        // Further processing...
    }
```
Example 11: Sample Server Interceptor code  (Sheet 2 of 2)

3 if (received_val_binary[received_val_binary->length()-1] == '\0')
    {
      cout << "Received a string principal in PI" << endl;
    }
else
  {
    cout << "Received a binary principal in PI" << endl;
    return;
  }
}
else
  {
    cout << "Did not received any principal!" << endl;
    return;
  }

4 // Show the principal value
CORBA::String_var received_val =
m_current->received_principal_as_string();

if (strlen(received_val.in()) != 0)
  {
    cout << "Received principal string in PI "
    << received_val.in() << endl;
  
5 // This is very contrived, but shows how to change a principal
    cout << "If principal is JOHN, change to PETER" << endl;
    if (strcmp(received_val.in(),"JOHN") == 0)
    {
      char* new_user = "PETER";
      m_current->change_received_principal_as_string(new_user);
    }
    else
    {
      cout << "Did not received any principal!" << endl;
    }
  }
Server interceptor sample code explanation

The sample server interceptor code can be explained as follows:
1. Obtain the principal in binary format. In binary format, the principal value does not undergo ASCII-to-EBCDIC conversion.
2. Check if a principal has been received.
3. Check if the principal value ends in a null terminator, which indicates that it is probably a string. (This depends on the conventions agreed with the client application.)
4. Because the interceptor returns if the principal value is not a string, it now re-obtains the principal value as a string with ASCII-to-EBCDIC conversion taking place.
5. In this example, it checks if the principal is JOHN. If the principal is JOHN, it is changed to PETER. This is just an example to show how to change a principal. Production applications probably have more complex rules for modifying principals.
6. Other interceptor points can also be implemented. For example, the send_exception() interceptor point can be implemented if tracking or logging of exceptions is desired. The receive_request_service_contexts() interceptor can be implemented if access to additional service contexts is required. Additionally, send_reply() can be used to check the length of the reply message, using the reply_body_length() method from the IT_MFA Current API.
## Compiling the Portable Interceptor

### Overview
This subsection outlines the build information used to compile the portable interceptor demonstration. It also provides information about the naming of the compiled DLL, and the location of the readme files that provide additional information about compiling the portable interceptor.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Compiling on native z/OS
- Compiling on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Specifying the correct DLL name when loading the portable interceptor
- Location of additional information for compiling the portable interceptor

### Compiling on native z/OS
Sample JCL to compile the portable interceptor can be found in `orbixhlq.DEMO.BLD.JCLLIB(ADTPICL)`. This compiles the two sample source files and links them into a DLL called `SECPI1`.

### Compiling on z/OS UNIX System Services
The `$IT_PRODUCT_DIR/asp/Version/demos/corba/pdk/security_pi` directory contains a makefile that is used to build the `SECPI1` DLL on z/OS UNIX System Services.

### Specifying the correct DLL name when loading the portable interceptor
The DLL name, `SECPI1`, has been chosen for this example, because it is a valid name in both a native z/OS and z/OS UNIX System Services environment. Any valid DLL name can be used for your target deployment environment. The correct DLL name must then be specified when selecting the portable interceptor that is to be loaded into the server adapter. Refer to “Loading the Portable Interceptor into the CICS Server Adapter” on page 286 for more details.
Adding a Portable Interceptor to the CICS Server Adapter

Location of additional information for compiling the portable interceptor

On native z/OS, the ADTP1 member in orbixhlq.DEMO.CPP.README also provides a description of how to compile the portable interceptor. You can refer to this for additional information.

On z/OS UNIX System Services, similar information tailored to compiling the portable interceptor is provided in $IT_PRODUCT_DIR/asp/Version/demos/corba/pdk/security_pi/README_CXX.txt.
CHAPTER 19 | Using the CICS Server Adapter

Loading the Portable Interceptor into the CICS Server Adapter

Overview
This subsection describes how the portable interceptor is loaded into the CICS server adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Loading the portable interceptor on native z/OS
- Loading the portable interceptor on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Setting related configuration items
- Sample CICS server adapter configuration scope

Loading the portable interceptor on native z/OS
Add the PDS containing the portable interceptor DLL to the STEPLIB for the CICS server adapter. On native z/OS, this can be done by updating the JCL used to run the server adapter. For example, add a `LOADLIB` value as follows:

```plaintext
//GO  EXEC PROC=ORXG,
//    PROGRAM=ORXCICSA,
//    LOADLIB=&ORBIX..DEMO.CPP.LOADLIB,
//    PPARM='run'
```

**Note:** If the `LOADLIB` symbolic is already in use, you might wish to update the `ORXG` procedure and add the PDS that contains the portable interceptor into the STEPLIB concatenation.

Loading the portable interceptor on z/OS UNIX System Services
If the server adapter is run from z/OS UNIX System Services, and the portable interceptor was built using JCL on native z/OS (that is, the `SECPI1` DLL resides in a PDS), add the PDS to the STEPLIB environment variable. The following is an example of how to do this, where `IT_PRODUCT_HLQ` is set to the relevant Orbix HLQ install area:

```bash
export STEPLIB=$IT_PRODUCT_HLQ.DEMO.CPP.LOADLIB;$STEPLIB
```
If the server adapter is run from z/OS UNIX System Services, and the portable interceptor was built using a makefile on z/OS UNIX System Services, so the SECPI1 DLL resides in a UNIX System Services directory, add the directory that contains the SECPI1 DLL to the LIBPATH environment variable. The following is an example of how to do this, where IT_PRODUCT_DIR is set to the relevant Orbix install area for z/OS UNIX System Services:

```bash
export LIBPATH=$IT_PRODUCT_DIR/asp/Version/demos/corba/pdk/security_pi:$LIBPATH
```

Setting related configuration items

The following configuration items must be set to load the plug-in:

- **orb_plugins**
  - The list must include the demo_sec ORB plug-in, which is the name that was used in the ORB plug-in demonstration code. This plug-in must appear before the portable_interceptor plug-in in the orb_plugins list.
  - The list must also include the portable_interceptor plug-in, to allow for portable interceptor support to be activated.

- **binding:server_binding_list**
  - The name of the server request interceptor must be added to this list, to allow it to gain control when a server request is being processed. For the purposes of this example, add the DemoPI interceptor.

- **plugins:demo_sec:shlib_name**
  - Specifies the name of the ORB plug-in library, without the version suffix.
Sample CICS server adapter configuration scope

For example, the following can be added to the CICS server adapter's configuration scope:

```
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_version = "SECPI";
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_name = "SECPI";
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_version = "1";
```

When the CICS server adapter is then started, the portable interceptor should be loaded and included in the server-side communication bindings.

Note: On z/OS, unlike on other platforms, a particular ORB plug-in DLL name is resolved from the Orbix configuration simply by appending the `shlib_version` to the `shlib_name`.

`plugins:demo_sec:shlib_version` Specifies the version number of the ORB plug-in library.

For example, the following can be added to the CICS server adapter's configuration scope:

```
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_version = "SECPI";
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_name = "SECPI";
plugins:demo_sec:shlib_version = "1";
```
Enabling the GIOP Request Logger Interceptor

Overview

The request logger plug-in uses the interceptor approach to log accounting information for each request and reply message. The request logger uses the ORB’s event log to perform the logging.

Format of log messages

The log messages take the following format:

| Request message: [REQUEST], peer IP address, peer port number, principal, operation, program name |
| Reply message: [REPLY], peer IP address, peer port number, principal, operation, program name, reply status |

The components of the preceding log messages can be explained as follows:

- **principal**: This is the user ID as specified in the incoming GIOP request. **NO_PRINCIPAL** is displayed if the principal was not sent by the client.

- **program name**: This field is specific to the **cicsraw** interface that is exposed by the server adapter (see “The CICS Server Adapter cicsraw Interface” on page 44). It refers to the program name as passed in the first argument of the run_program operations. For all other interfaces/operations, this field does not appear.

- **reply status**: This indicates the success status of the invocation. Values can be:
  - **NO_EXCEPTION**—success: reply data is being sent back to the client.
  - **SYSTEM_EXCEPTION**—failure: a CORBA system exception is being thrown.
  - **USER_EXCEPTION**—failure: a CORBA user exception is being thrown.
Sample log output

The following is an example of some log output:

Mon, 01 May 2006 14:38:52.0000000 [thehost:CICSA,A=0040] (IT_REQUEST_LOGGER:202) I - [REQUEST] 10.2.100.8, 1408, johndoe, run_transaction(), PART
Mon, 01 May 2006 14:38:53.0000000 [thehost:CICSA,A=0040] (IT_REQUEST_LOGGER:202) I - [REPLY] 10.2.100.8, 1408, johndoe, run_transaction(), PART, NO_EXCEPTION

Configuration

To enable the request logger, the following configuration items must be modified:

orb_plugins

The request_logger plug-in must be added to the orb_plugins list. Also, ensure that this list includes a log stream plug-in (for example, the local_log_stream).

binding:server_binding_list

The name of the server request interceptor must appear in the list of allowable server bindings. The interceptor is also called request_logger.

event_log:filters

The request logger event subsystem can be enabled by adding IT_REQUEST_LOGGER=* to the list of filters. This indicates that all event log messages from this plug-in are to be enabled.

Sample configuration scope

For example, the following can be added to the CICS server adapter's configuration scope:

```
orb_plugins = ["local_log_stream", "iiop_profile", "giop", "iiop", "request_logger"];
binding:server_binding_list = ["request_logger"];
event_log:filters = ["IT_REQUEST_LOGGER=*", "IT_MFA=INFO_HI+WARN+ERROR+FATAL"];
```

Also ensure that the following global variables are specified in the ORXINTRL configuration file:

- `plugins:request_logger:shlib_name = "ORXRLOG";`
- `plugins:request_logger:shlib_version = "5";`
Gathering Accounting Information in the Server Adapter

Overview
This section describes how to activate a DLL in the CICS server adapter that can gather and log accounting type information. A sample accounting DLL is provided in your Orbix installation in the orbixhlq.LOADLIB load library. You can customize the behavior of this DLL to suit your needs.

In this section
This section discusses the following topics:

- Customizing the Accounting DLL page 292
- Compiling the Customized Accounting DLL page 296
- Activating the Accounting DLL in the Server Adapter page 297

Note: For testing purposes, you can choose to use the sample DLL directly as shipped. In this case, there is no need to perform any of the DLL customization tasks as outlined in this section.
Customizing the Accounting DLL

Overview

The accounting DLL consists of a call to the function
\texttt{IT\_MFA\_display\_account\_information()} for mapped requests, and a call
to the function \texttt{IT\_MFA\_display\_raw\_interface\_account\_information()} for
\texttt{cicsraw} requests, after each CICS server adapter request has been
completed. You can implement your own version of these functions and
replace the DLL called \texttt{ORXACCT2}, to gather the customized accounting
information.

This section discusses the following topics:

- \texttt{IT\_MFA\_display\_account\_information()} parameters
- Sample use of \texttt{IT\_MFA\_display\_account\_information()}
- Location of sample source code

\textbf{IT\_MFA\_display\_account\_information()} parameters

The parameters for the function contain the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>This is the interface name of the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation</td>
<td>This is the operation name of the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mapped_name</td>
<td>This is the transaction or program name that is invoked in CICS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request_length</td>
<td>This is the total length of inbound data received from TCP/IP, excluding the 12-byte fixed GIOP header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply_length</td>
<td>This is the total length of outbound data sent back via TCP/IP, excluding the 12-byte fixed GIOP header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principal</td>
<td>The Client principal, if available; otherwise, an empty string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_arglist</td>
<td>This is an NVList of all the arguments for the request. This NVList is in the state after the reply has been transmitted back to the client application, so only limited data is available in it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dynany_set</td>
<td>Indicates if the first argument has been saved in a dynamic any when the request was received from the client. This dynamic any is the next parameter. Saving the argument has to be activated via configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>First argument, if saved. Refer to the chapter on Any’s and Dynamic Any’s in the <em>CORBA Programmer’s Guide, C++</em> for details on how to access the data contained in this parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orb</td>
<td>Pointer to the CICS server adapter ORB, if needed, for example, to call <code>resolve_initial_references()</code> to obtain a current object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample use of IT_MFA_display_account_information()

Here is an example of what can be done in the function.

**Example 12:** Sample use of IT_MFA_display_account_information() (Sheet 1 of 2)

```cpp
#include <it_cal/iostream.h>
#include <it_cal/fstream.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <it_mfa/account.h>

IT_USING_NAMESPACE_STD

void IT_MFA_display_account_information(
    const char* interface,
    const char* operation,
    const char* mapped_name,
    CORBA::Long request_length,
    CORBA::Long reply_length,
    const char* principal,
    CORBA::NVList_ptr local_arglist,
    CORBA::Boolean dynany_set,
    DynamicAny::DynAny_ptr da,
    CORBA::ORB_ptr orb
)
{
    cout << "Accounting information: " << endl;
    cout << " Interface:   " << interface << endl;
    cout << " Operation:   " << operation << endl;
    cout << " Tran:        " << mapped_name << endl;
    cout << " Request len: " << request_length << endl;
    cout << " Reply len:   " << reply_length << endl;
    cout << " Principal:   " << principal << endl;
    
```
Gathering Accounting Information in the Server Adapter

Example 12: Sample use of IT_MFA_display_account_information() (Sheet 2 of 2)

```cpp
// Gather type information from the NVList
    cout << " Number of Arguments: " << local_arglist->count() << endl;

    // Display information from the first parameter
    if (dynany_set == IT_TRUE)
    {
        CORBA::TypeCode_ptr type = da->type();

        cout << " Kind: " << type->kind() << endl;
        cout << " Id:   " << type->id() << endl;
        if ((type->kind() == CORBA::tk_struct))
        {
            cout << " Member count: " << type->member_count() << endl;
            for (int ii=0; ii < type->member_count(); ii++)
            {
                CORBA::TypeCode_ptr type1 = type->member_type(ii);
                cout << " Kind of member: " << type1->kind() << endl;
            }
        }
        cout << endl;
    }
```

Location of sample source code

The source code for this sample function is contained in `orbixhq. DEMO. CPP. SRC (ACCOUNT)`. This example can be used as a basis for a function which logs the request accounting information in the desired format.
Compiling the Customized Accounting DLL

Overview

The IT_MFA_display_account_information() and IT_MFA_display_raw_interface_account_information() functions must be compiled into a C++ DLL, called ORXACCT2. This is the name of the library that the CICS server adapter uses when it is configured to call out to these functions.

This section discusses the following topics:

- Location of sample JCL to compile IT_MFA_display_account_information()
- Location of additional information for compiling IT_MFA_display_account_information()

Location of sample JCL to compile IT_MFA_display_account_information()

Sample JCL to compile the DLL can be found in orbixh1q.DEMO.CPP.BUILD.JCLLIB(ACCTCL). By default, this job generates the customized ORXACCT2 DLL in the orbixh1q.DEMO.CPP.LOADLIB PDS.

Location of additional information for compiling IT_MFA_display_account_information()

The orbixh1q.DEMO.CPP.README(ACCOUNT) file also provides a description of how to compile the DLL, which can be referred to for additional information.
Activating the Accounting DLL in the Server Adapter

Overview

This subsection describes how the customized accounting DLL can be loaded into the server adapter at runtime. It also describes how to activate this functionality. It discusses the following topics:

- Loading the accounting DLL on native z/OS
- Loading the accounting DLL on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Setting required configuration items

Loading the accounting DLL on native z/OS

To load the customized accounting DLL on native z/OS, add the PDS containing your customized version of the accounting DLL to the STEPLIB concatenation for the server adapter. This can be done by updating the CICS server adapter JCL. For example, add a LOADLIB value as follows:

```bash
//GO  EXEC PROC=ORXG,
//    PROGRAM=ORXCICSA,
//    LOADLIB=ORBX..DEMO.CPP.LOADLIB,
//    PPARM='run'
```

Loading the accounting DLL on z/OS UNIX System Services

To load the customized accounting DLL on z/OS UNIX System Services, add the PDS to the STEPLIB environment variable, for example using:

```bash
export STEPLIB=orbixhlq..DEMO.CPP.LOADLIB:$STEPLIB
```

In the preceding example, `orbixhlq` represents the relevant high-level qualifier for the PDS.

Setting required configuration items

If the `plugins:cicsa:call_accounting_dll` configuration item is set to `yes`, the server adapter invokes on the appropriate accounting function after it has processed each request and sent the reply from CICS back to the client.

If the `plugins:cicsa:capture_first_argument_in_dynany` configuration item is set to `yes`, the first argument of the request, if it is an input argument, is also preserved and passed to the function.
Exporting Object References at Runtime

Overview

When you start the server adapter it can export object references for the interfaces it supports. These object references relate to the MappingGateway interface, the cicsraw interface, and (optionally) any other mapped interfaces that have been defined to the server adapter via its mapping file at start-up. The server adapter can export these object references to a file, to the Naming Service, or both.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

| Configuration Items for Exporting Object References | page 299 |
| Exporting Object References to a File | page 305 |
| Exporting Object References to Naming Service Context | page 306 |
| Exporting Object References to Naming Service Object Group | page 308 |
## Configuration Items for Exporting Object References

### Overview
This subsection describes the configuration items that are used to control the export of object references from the server adapter.

### Configuration items summary
The following table summarizes the configuration items that are used to control the export of object references from the server adapter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>plugins:cicsa:object_publishers</strong></td>
<td>This specifies where the adapter can publish its object references. Valid options are <code>naming_service</code> to publish object references to the Naming Service, and <code>filesystem</code> to publish object references to file. The default value is <code>&quot;&quot;</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_file</strong></td>
<td>This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the <code>plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename</code> configuration item described next.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename</strong></td>
<td>This supersedes the <code>plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_file</code> configuration item. It specifies the file that is to be used if you want the adapter to export object references to a file. You can specify the full path to an HFS filename, a PDS member name, or a PDS name as the value for this item. If this configuration item is not included in the adapter's configuration, no object references are exported to file. See “Configuration example” on page 305 for more details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** None of these configuration items are included by default in the adapter configuration file. If you want to configure the server adapter to export object references, you must add these configuration items, as appropriate.
plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_context
This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context configuration item described next.

plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context
This supersedes the plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_context configuration item. It specifies the Naming Service context that is to be used if you want the adapter to export object references to a Naming Service context. If this configuration item is not included in the adapter's configuration, no object references are exported to a Naming Service context. If you specify a value of "", the object references are written to the root context of the Naming Service.

plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create
This specifies whether the Naming Service context specified by plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context should be created if it does not exist. Valid options are true and false. The default value is true.

plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode
This specifies whether adapter-deployed objects are to be published during start-up only or whether updates are also to be published. Valid options are startup and current. The default value is startup.

plugins:cicsa:place_iors_in_nested_ns_scopes
This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes configuration item described next.
Exporting Object References at Runtime

Plugins: Cicsa: Write Iors to NS Context

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context configuration item described next.

Plugins: Cicsa: Object Publisher: Naming Service: Context

This supersedes the plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_context configuration item. It specifies the Naming Service context that is to be used if you want the adapter to export object references to a Naming Service context. If this configuration item is not included in the adapter's configuration, no object references are exported to a Naming Service context. If you specify a value of "", the object references are written to the root context of the Naming Service.

Plugins: Cicsa: Object Publisher: Naming Service: Context: Auto Create

This specifies whether the Naming Service context specified by plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context should be created if it does not exist. Valid options are true and false. The default value is true.

Plugins: Cicsa: Object Publisher: Naming Service: Update Mode

This specifies whether adapter-deployed objects are to be published during start-up only or whether updates are also to be published. Valid options are startup and current. The default value is startup.

Plugins: Cicsa: Place Iors In Nested NS Scopes

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes configuration item described next.
CHAPTER 19 | Using the CICS Server Adapter

plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:
  naming_service:nested_scopes
  
  This supersedes plugins:cicsa:
  place_iors_in_nested_ns_scopes. If
  this is set to false, the IOR is stored in
  the specified scope in the Naming
  Service. If this is set to true, the
  module name(s) of the interface for the
  IOR is used to navigate subscopes from
  the configured scope, with the same
  names as the module names. The IOR
  is then placed in the relevant subscope.
  The default is false.

  When using Naming Service contexts
  and

  plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:
  naming_service:context:auto_create
  is set to true, contexts are created for
  IDL module scopes. For example,
  Simple/SimpleObject with
  plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:
  naming_service:context: set to base
  creates a context tree of /base/Simple
  for SimpleObject.

  The default for
  plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:
  naming_service:nested_scopes is
  false.

plugins:cicsa:publish_all_iors

  If this is set to yes, the object
  references for the MappingGateway
  interface, the cicsraw interface, and all
  interfaces specified in the adapter
  mapping file are exported. If this is set
  to no, only the object references for the
  MappingGateway and cicsraw
  interfaces are exported. The default is
  no.

  Note: This configuration item is only
  used by the deprecated object
  publishing configuration items. When
  using the new object publishing
  configuration items, all IORs are
  published.
Exporting Object References at Runtime

plugins:cicsa:remove_ns_iors_on_shutdown

If this is set to yes, the server adapter attempts to unbind the object references from the Naming Service when it shuts down normally (for example, via an operator stop command). The default is no.

Note: This configuration item is only used by the deprecated object publishing configuration items. When using the new object publishing configuration items, the setting of plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode determines if the server adapter attempts to unbind object references from the Naming Service when it shuts down normally. A setting of current causes the server adapter to attempt to unbind references at shutdown.

plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_group_with_prefix

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix configuration item described next.

plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix

This supersedes the plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_group_with_prefix configuration item. It specifies the prefix that is to be added to each generated name indicating an interface. The specified prefix is attached to the generated name, to specify the object group that is to be used. If a prefix of "" is specified, no prefix is added. If this configuration setting is not present, no object references are exported to any object groups.

plugins:cicsa:write_iors_to_ns_group_member_name

This item has now been deprecated and is superseded by the plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name configuration item described next.
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:
  naming_service:group:
    member_name

This supersedes the plugins:cicsa:
write_iors_to_ns_group_member_
name configuration item. It specifies the
member name that the server adapter
is to use in the object group. A unique
member name must be specified for
each adapter; otherwise, one adapter
might end up replacing the object
group members of another adapter.
Exporting Object References to a File

Overview
When it comes to the server adapter exporting object references, the simplest option is to have the adapter export them to a file. This subsection provides an example of the configuration settings that are required to enable the export of object references to a file, and the subsequent output produced.

Configuration example
The following configuration settings indicate that the server adapter should export object references for all the interfaces it supports to the home directory of user1:

```
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["file_system"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename = "/home/user1/test.txt";
```

The following configuration settings indicate that the server adapter should export object references for all the interfaces it supports to a data set called MFAIORS:

```
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["file_system"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:filesystem:filename = "DD:MFAIORS";
```

Example output
The following is an example of the output produced in the file for the first of the preceding configuration examples, assuming the simple demonstration has been added to the adapter mapping file:

```
IT_MFA = IOR:0000000000000027494...
Simple:SimpleObject = IOR:000000000000001c4944...
IT_MFA_CICS:cicsraw = IOR:00000000000000254944...
```
Exporting Object References to Naming Service Context

### Overview
When it comes to exporting object references to the Naming Service, the server adapter can be configured to export to either a Naming Service context or a Naming Service object group. This subsection provides details about exporting to a Naming Service context.

**Note:** The simultaneous exporting of object references to both a Naming Service context and a Naming Service object group is not supported.

### Prerequisites
If the server adapter is configured to export its object references to a Naming Service context, the following prerequisites apply:

- The Naming Service used must support the `CosNaming::NamingContextExt` interface.
- The initial reference for this Naming Service must be supplied to the adapter either in the adapter's configuration file or via the command line at start-up.

### Configuration
The `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context` configuration item specifies the Naming Service context to which the adapter should export its object references. If a value of "" (that is, an empty context) is specified for this item, the object references are written to the root context. To indicate a nested context, the specified value must take a format of `context/context/context`.

**Note:** The context must exist when the adapter is started. See the Orbix Administrator's Guide for details of how to create contexts with `itadmin`, in particular how to create and specify nested Naming Service contexts. However, if `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create` is set to `true`, the context is created automatically if it does not already exist.

If `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode` is set to `current`, the adapter calls `unbind()` on the object references in the Naming Service as part of a normal shut-down operation.
Object ID

The ID for the object bound into the Naming Service is derived from the module and interface name. First, all the module names are used and then the interface name, each separated by a colon. For example, the ID for the interface for the simple demonstration is Simple:SimpleObject. The kind parameter is always left empty. The MappingGateway interface uses IT_MFA as the ID.

rebind() function

The adapter uses rebind() to add the object references to the Naming Service, so any existing object reference with the same name in the same context is replaced.

Example

The following itadmin command creates a context called test in the Naming Service:

```
itadmin ns newnc test
```

**Note:** You can also create a context using an equivalent piece of JCL.

**Note:** If plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create is set to true, the Naming Service context is created automatically, and the preceding itadmin command is not necessary.

The following configuration settings indicate that when the adapter starts, it should write all of its object references to the Naming Service context called test, which will be created if it does not already exist. It should subsequently remove the object references again on shutting down (during a normal shut-down):

```
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["naming_service"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context = "test";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:context:auto_create = "true";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode = "current";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes = "false";
```
Exporting Object References to Naming Service Object Group

Overview

When it comes to exporting object references to the Naming Service, the server adapter can be configured to export to either a Naming Service context or a Naming Service object group. This subsection provides details about exporting to a Naming Service object group.

Note: The simultaneous exporting of object references to both a Naming Service context and a Naming Service object group is not supported. See the Orbix Administrator's Guide for more details on Naming Service object groups.

Prerequisites

If the server adapter is configured to export its object references to a set of Naming Service object groups, the following prerequisites apply:

- The Naming Service used must support the Orbix load balancing extensions to the Naming Service.
- The initial reference for the Naming Service must be available to the adapter either in the adapter’s configuration file or via the command line at start-up.
- The object group must be predefined, so that the load balancing algorithm defined for each object group can be used—the load balancing algorithm might be round-robin, random, or some other custom load balancing algorithm.

Summary of rules

The following rules apply when mapping object references to a Naming service object group:

- An object group must be created for each object before the adapter is started; otherwise, the objects will not be exported. If you are unsure about the names of the object groups, start the adapter without any object groups created and check the error messages to see which object groups are needed.
- The object groups must then be bound to “objects”, so that clients can locate them. The fact that object groups are used is transparent to the clients.
Exporting Object References at Runtime

- Each adapter must have a unique member name to ensure that it does not overwrite object group members created by other adapters.
- Members are only removed if the adapter shuts down normally; for example, by using an operator Stop command, by using itadmin mfa stop, or by calling the stop operation on the adapter’s MappingGateway interface.

### Configuration

Both the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix` and `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name` configuration items indicate that the adapter should write its object references to a Naming Service object group.

If a value of "" (that is, an empty prefix) is specified for `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix`, the object references are written to object groups derived from the interface name only; otherwise, the prefix is attached to the derived names for each object group.

**Note:** The object groups must exist when the adapter is started. See the Orbix Administrator’s Guide for details on how to create and specify nested Naming Service contexts.

The object reference for each interface is placed in the relevant object group, with the member name obtained from the `plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name` configuration variable. A unique member name must be specified for each adapter that is to use the set of object groups.

### Object group name

The object group name used for each object bound into the Naming Service is derived from the module and interface name. First, all the module names are used and then the interface name, each separated by a colon. For example, the object group name for the interface for the simple demonstration is `Simple:SimpleObject`. If the prefix is not blank, it is attached to the start of each derived object group name before the object group is located in the naming service. The MappingGateway interface uses `IT_MFA` as the object group name.
rebind() function

The adapter uses `rebind()` to add the object references to the Naming Service, so any existing member in the object group is replaced.

Example

For example, consider the following configuration settings:

```plaintext
plugins:cicsa:object_publishers = ["naming_service"];
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:prefix = "group1_";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:group:member_name = "adapter1";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode = "current";
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:nested_scopes = "false";
```

Assuming the interface for the simple demonstration is the only one exported by the adapter, the following `itadmin` commands create object groups called `group1_IT_MFA`, `group1_IT_MFA_CICS:cicsraw`, and `group1_Simple:SimpleObject`:

```plaintext
itadmin nsog create -type rr group1_IT_MFA
itadmin nsog create -type rr group1_IT_MFA_CICS:cicsraw
itadmin nsog create -type rr group1_Simple:SimpleObject
```

**Note:** You can also create object groups via an equivalent piece of JCL.

Now, with the three round-robin object groups created, each needs to be bound to a context in the Naming Service, so that clients can locate the object references. For example, the following command creates a context called testog:

```plaintext
itadmin ns newnc testog
```

Each object group should be subsequently created in this context, using the following commands, so that clients can locate the objects:

```plaintext
itadmin nsog bind -og_name group1_IT_MFA testog/IT_MFA
itadmin nsog bind -og_name group1_IT_MFA_CICS:cicsraw testog/cicsraw
itadmin nsog bind -og_name group1_Simple:SimpleObject testog/simple
```
Based on the preceding command, the content of the testog context should now be listed as follows (when you specify an `itadmin ns list testog` command):

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IT_MFA Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cicsraw Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple Object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

If a client now resolves one of the object references before any adapter is started, a nil object will be returned. For example, consider the following command:

```
itadmin ns resolve testog/cicsraw
```

If the preceding `itadmin` command is entered before an adapter is started, the following output is returned:

```
IOR:00000000000000100000000000000000
```

If the preceding `itadmin` command is entered after an adapter is started, the following output is returned:

```
IOR:000000000000025494...
```

**Running simultaneous adapters**

If more than one adapter is started, each time `resolve()` is used it gives a different object reference, based on the load balancing algorithm specified when the object group was created.

If all the adapters are stopped normally and the following configuration has been specified, `resolve` again returns a nil object reference:

```
plugins:cicsa:object_publisher:naming_service:update_mode = "current"
```
Part 5
Securing and Using the Client Adapter

In this part
This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Securing the Client Adapter</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Client Adapter</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter provides details of security considerations involved in using the client adapter. It provides a review of general Orbix security implications and the relevant CICS security mechanisms. It describes the various security modes that the APPC-based client adapter supports, with particular emphasis on how each mode affects the existing CICS security mechanisms.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security Configuration Items</th>
<th>page 316</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common Security Considerations</td>
<td>page 321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPC Security Considerations</td>
<td>page 323</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Security Configuration Items

Overview

This section provides an example and details of how to configure the client adapter to run with Transport Layer Security (TLS) enabled. The sample configuration includes a `csiv2` sub-scope that highlights the configuration items required to propagate CSiv2 user/password credentials to CSiv2-enabled targets.

Sample configuration

Example 13 provides an overview of the configuration items used to enable security with the client adapter.

Example 13: Sample Security Configuration for Client Adapter (Sheet 1 of 3)

```
plugins:security:share_credentials_across_orbs = "true";

# By default, use TLS V1. Downgrade to SSL V3 if the remote
# peer is unable to support TLS V1.
policies:mechanism_policy:protocol_version = ["TLS_V1", "SSL_V3"];

# Please change the following if you have only export strength
# encryption available on the machine.
policies:mechanism_policy:ciphersuites = ["RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA",
                                          "RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5"];

plugins:systemssl_toolkit:saf_keyring
= "%(LOCAL_SSL_USER_SAF_KEYRING)";

principal_sponsor:use_principal_sponsor = "true";
principal_sponsor:auth_method_id = "security_label";

# By default, use the 'iona_services' certificate from the keyring
principal_sponsor:auth_method_data = ["label=iona_services"];

# By default the following policies are used to deploy a
# fully secure domain where client authentication is not required:
#
policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:requires =
  ["Confidentiality", "DetectMisordering",
   "DetectReplay", "Integrity"];
policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:supports =
```
Example 13: Sample Security Configuration for Client Adapter  (Sheet 2 of 3)
The following is a summary of the security-related configuration items associated with the global scope:

- **plugins:security:share_credentials_across_orbs**: Enables own security credentials to be shared across ORBs. Normally, when you specify an own SSL/TLS credential (using the principal sponsor or the principal authenticator), the credential is available only to the ORB that created it. By setting this configuration item to true, however, the own SSL/TLS credentials created by one ORB are automatically made available to any other ORBs that are configured to share credentials.

- **policies:mechanism_policy:protocol_version**: Specifies the protocol version used by a security capsule (ORB instance). It can be set to SSL_V3 or TLS_V1.

- **policies:mechanism_policy:ciphersuites**: Specifies a list of cipher suites for the default mechanism policy.
plugins:systemssl_toolkit:
saf_keyring

Specifies the RACF keyring to be used as the source of X.509 certificates. This must match the keyring you specified in the GENCERT JCL.

principal_sponsor:use_principal_sponsor

This must be set to true to indicate that the certificate information is to be specified in the configuration file.

principal_sponsor:auth_method_id

This must be set to security_label to indicate that the certificate lookup should be performed using the label mechanism.

principal_sponsor:auth_method_data

If you are using TLS security, this specifies the label that should be used to look up the SSL/TLS certificate in the SAF key store. The specified label name must match the label name under which the server certificate was imported into, or created in, the key store (for example, in RACF).

policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:requires

Specifies the invocation policy required by the server for accepting secure SSL/TLS connection attempts.

policies:target_secure_invocation_policy:supports

Specifies the invocation policies supported by the server for accepting secure SSL/TLS connection attempts.

policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:requires

Specifies the invocation policy required by the client for opening secure SSL/TLS connections.

policies:client_secure_invocation_policy:supports

Specifies the invocation policies supported by the client for opening secure SSL/TLS connections.

orb_plugins

The iiop_tls plug-in must be added to this list, to enable TLS support.

Note: Remove the iiop plug-in if you explicitly wish to disable all insecure communications.

Note: See the Mainframe Security Guide for more details of these configuration items.
### Summary of CSIV2 configuration items

The following is a summary of the configuration items associated with the `iona_services:cics_client:csiv2` security plug-in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>orb_plugins</strong></td>
<td>The <code>csi</code> plug-in must be added to this list for CSIV2 credentials propagation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>event_log:filters</strong></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The <code>iiop_tls</code> plug-in is a prerequisite for CSIV2 and must also be included if the <code>csi</code> plug-in is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>binding:client_binding_list</strong></td>
<td>All CSIV2-specific messages (informational and otherwise) can be enabled by adding <code>IT_CSI-*</code> to this list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>principal_sponsor:csi:</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a list of potential client-side binding chains. The CSI binding must be added to the relevant chains to effect CSIV2 credential propagation at invocation time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>principal_sponsor:csi:</strong></td>
<td>This must be set to <code>true</code> to indicate that the CSIV2 credential information is to be specified in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>principal_sponsor:csi:</strong></td>
<td>This must be set to <code>GSSUPMech</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>principal_sponsor:csi:</strong></td>
<td>This list is used to specify the credentials information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>policies:csi:auth_over_transport:</strong></td>
<td>This must be set to <code>EstablishTrustInClient</code> to indicate that the client is capable of propagating credentials.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Common Security Considerations

### Overview
This section provides details of common security considerations involved in using the CICS client adapter. It discusses the following topics:
- Orbix SSL/TLS
- iSF integration
- Principal propagation

### Orbix SSL/TLS
Orbix provides Transport Layer Security (TLS) that enables secure connectivity over IIOP. TLS includes authentication, encryption, and message integrity. As with all Orbix applications, you can configure the CICS client adapter to use TLS. See the *Mainframe Security Guide* for details on securing CORBA applications with SSL/TLS.

### iSF integration
The IONA security framework (iSF) provides a common security framework for all Orbix components in your system. This framework is involved at both the transport layer (using TLS) and the application layer (using the CORBA CSIv2 protocol and the Orbix generic security plug-in (GSP)). At the application level, in terms of the CICS client adapter, one of the following authentication credentials can be passed:
- username/password/domain name
- Single sign-on (SSO) token

You can configure the client adapter to use CSI/GSP support. See the *Mainframe Security Guide* for details on iSF and integration with an off-host Security service.

### Principal propagation
By default, when an Orbix CICS client invokes a request via the client adapter, it passes the user ID of the running CICS transaction to the client adapter as part of the requesting message. The client adapter will then interact with the GIOP *Current Interface* to set the outgoing principal identifier to this CICS user ID. If the GIOP plug-in has been configured appropriately, this ID is then sent as part of the CORBA request to the target server.
The following table highlights the pertinent GIOP configuration settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>policies:giop:interop_policy: send_principal = &quot;true&quot;;</code></td>
<td>This instructs GIOP to propagate a principal value if one has been specified for the outgoing client request. For example, the <code>local_principal_as_string()</code> attribute in the GIOP Current interface can be used to set a text-based user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>policies:giop:interop_policy: enable_principal_service_context = true;</code></td>
<td>For GIOP 1.2, if this item is set to <code>true</code>, it instructs the client adapter to insert the outgoing principal string in a service context. This is required because the <code>CORBA::Principal</code> field is not available in the request header for GIOP 1.2 messages. The default value is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>policies:giop:interop_policy: principal_service_context_id</code></td>
<td>This item specifies the service context ID into which the CICS client adapter attempts to insert the principal string, if <code>policies:giop:interop_policy: enable_principal_service_context</code> has been set to <code>true</code>. If this configuration setting is not specified, a default ID of <code>0x49545F44</code> is used to create the service context.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You cannot configure the default processing behavior of the client adapter. For example, setting the `use_client_principal` configuration item has no effect in this case. To customize the processing behavior of the client adapter (for example, to map the CICS user ID to a network ID), you can use the Orbix PDK to develop a client-side interceptor.
APPC Security Considerations

Overview

This section provides details on how to secure the client adapter in an APPC environment. It discusses the following topics:

- Overview of APPC security
- APPC LU security
- Define the CICS connection with BINDSECURITY
- Define APPCLU RACF profiles
- APPC conversation security
- Controlling access to the client adapter LU
- Controlling access to the CICS local LU

Overview of APPC security

APPC/MVS provides the following levels of security:

- LU security
- Conversation security

APPC LU security

The client adapter processes client transactions from CICS. Therefore, CICS should be allowed to establish sessions with the client adapter. Other APPC applications on the network, however, are not intended to process requests via the client adapter. In some environments it might be considered a security breach if any application other than CICS establishes an APPC connection with the client adapter.

To prevent applications other than CICS from establishing sessions with the client adapter, APPC LU security can be used. Enable APPC LU security by doing the following:

- Define the VTAM APPLs for the system base LU and the client adapter with the appropriate keywords
- Define the CICS CONNECTION with BINDSECURITY
- Define APPCLU RACF profiles
- Define VTAM APPLs with Security Keywords
For the system base LU, make sure the following keywords are defined on the VTAM APPL definition:

**Table 9: APPC LU Security System Base LU Keyword Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SECACPT=CONV</td>
<td>This keyword allows CICS to provide security information on a request to allocate a conversation. The security information includes the user ID making the request to allocate the conversation, the user's group ID, and an “already verified” indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERIFY=OPTIONAL</td>
<td>This setting makes the definition compatible with the client adapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the client adapter LU, make sure the following keywords are defined on the VTAM APPL definition:

**Table 10: APPC LU Security Client Adapter LU Keyword Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SECACPT=CONV</td>
<td>Allows security information on the allocate request as described above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERIFY=REQUIRED</td>
<td>This keyword requires that a RACF APPCLU profile is defined for this LU and for any LU that attempts to establish a session with it. If RACF APPCLU profiles do not exist, the session cannot be established. If profiles do exist, the session keys in each profile must match; otherwise, the session cannot be established.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Define the CICS connection with BINDSECURITY**

Setting **BINDSECURITY** on the CICS CONNECTION causes CICS to perform bind time security when attempting to establish sessions with the client adapter. Set **BINDSECURITY(YES)** on the CONNECTION definition. Refer to “Bind Time Security with APPC” on page 106 for more information on bind time security and the prerequisites for its use.
Define APPCLU RACF profiles

The CICS local LU and the client adapter LU require RACF APPCLU profiles. The names have the following pattern:

```
NETID.LU01.LU02
```

`NETID` represents your network ID. `LU01` and `LU02` are the LU names to be secured. Each LU requires its own profile. The profile name in the preceding example would be for `LU01`. The profile name for `LU02` would be as follows:

```
NETID.LU02.LU01
```

Even though CICS makes use of the system base LU to establish sessions with the client adapter, it is not the LU that must be secured. The LU defined in the CICS `SIT APPLID` parameter is the LU that must be secured.

The following is an example of defining the profiles for the CICS local LU and the client adapter LU:

```
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.CICSTS1.ORXLUCA1
UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
```

```
RDEFINE APPCLU P390.ORXLUCA1.CICSTS1
UACC(NONE) SESSION(SESSKEY(137811C0) CONVSEC(ALREADYV))
```

To activate the profiles in RACF, use the following command:

```
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCLU)
```

To refresh the profile in VTAM, use the following VTAM command:

```
F VTAM,PROFILES,ID=CICSTS1
F VTAM,PROFILES,ID=ORXLUCA1
```

In the preceding example, `VTAM` is the name of the procedure used to start VTAM.

**Note:** Although APPC can be used for networked communication, the client adapter is only intended to be run on the same machine as the CICS region with which it is communicating.
APPCC conversation security

There are three levels of conversation security:

- security_none
- security_same
- security_pgm

The Orbix runtime inside CICS uses security_same when allocating its conversations with the client adapter.

A conversation using security_pgm is not possible with the client adapter, because the Orbix runtime inside CICS has no access to client passwords.

APPC conversation security allows for:

- Controlling which users are permitted access to the client adapter LU
- Controlling which users are permitted to access the CICS local LU

Refer to "LU 6.2 conversation security levels" on page 231 for more details on each conversation security level.

Controlling access to the client adapter LU

Some environments might want very strict controls regarding which users are permitted access to the client adapter. A RACF APPL class can be defined for the client adapter LU specifying a universal access of NONE. Individual users can then be permitted access to the client adapter LU.

An example of defining the RACF APPL class is as follows:

```
RDEFINE APPL ORXLUCA1 UACC(NONE)
```

Individual users can then be permitted access to the client adapter LU:

```
PERMIT ORXLUCA1 CLASS(APPL) ID(USER1) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT ORXLUCA1 CLASS(APPL) ID(USER2) ACCESS(READ)
... 
```

Activate the APPL class as follows:

```
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPL) RACLIST(APPL)
```

Refresh the RACLIST as follows:

```
SETROPTS RACLIST(APPL) REFRESH
```
Controlling access to the CICS local LU

Access to the client adapter LU can be controlled by controlling access to the CICS local LU that wants to establish communications with the client adapter LU. The CICS local LU is considered an APPC port of entry and can be secured with the RACF `APPCPORT` class.

Define the `APPCPORT` profile for the CICS local LU as follows:

```plaintext
RDEFINE APPCPORT CICSTS1 UACC(NONE)
```

This profile defines a universal access of `NONE` to the system base LU. To permit access to users, use the RACF `PERMIT` command:

```plaintext
PERMIT MVSLU01 CLASS(APPCPORT) ID(USER1) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT MVSLU01 CLASS(APPCPORT) ID(USER2) ACCESS(READ)
...```

Activate the `APPCPORT` class as follows:

```plaintext
SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPCPORT) RACLIST(APPCPORT)
```

When changes are made to an `APPCPORT` profile, refresh the profile for the change to take effect:

```plaintext
SETROPTS RACLST(AppCPort) REFRESH
```
Using the Client Adapter

This chapter provides information on running and using the client adapter. It provides details on how to start and stop the client adapter, and also provides details on how to run multiple client adapters.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Starting the Client Adapter</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopping the Client Adapter</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Multiple Client Adapters Simultaneously</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Starting the Client Adapter

Overview

This section describes how to start the client adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Starting the client adapter on native z/OS
- Starting the client adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services
- Running with a different configuration scope

Starting the client adapter on native z/OS

In a native z/OS environment, you can start the client adapter in any of the following ways:

- As a batch job.
- Using a TSO command.
- As a started task (by converting the batch job into a started task).

The default client adapter is the client adapter for which configuration is defined directly in the `iona_services.cics_client` scope, and not in some sub-scope of this. The following is sample JCL to run the default client adapter:

```
//CICSCA JOB (),
//       CLASS=A,
//       MSGCLASS=X,
//       MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
//       NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//       REGION=0M,
//       TIME=1440
//*
//       JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//       INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*
//* Run the Orbix CICS Client Adapter
//*
//* Make the following changes before running this JCL:
//*
//* 1. Change 'SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@' to your configuration
domain name.
//*
//*    SET DOMAIN='DEFAULT@'
```
Starting the Client Adapter

On z/OS UNIX System Services, you can start the client adapter from the shell. The following command is used to run the default client adapter:

```
$ itcicsca
```

Running with a different configuration scope

To run the client adapter with a different configuration scope:

- On native z/OS set the value of `PPARM` to the new scope, for example:

  ```
  PPARM=’-ORBname iona_services.cics_client’
  ```

- On z/OS UNIX System Services run a command similar to the following:

  ```
  $ itcicsa -ORBname iona_services.cics_client
  ```

Refer to “Running Multiple Client Adapters Simultaneously” on page 333 for more details on running multiple client adapters.
# Stopping the Client Adapter

## Overview

This section describes how to stop the client adapter. It discusses the following topics:

- Stopping the client adapter on native z/OS
- Stopping the client adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

## Stopping the client adapter on native z/OS

To stop a client adapter job on native z/OS, issue the `STOP (P)` operator command from the console.

## Stopping the client adapter on z/OS UNIX System Services

To stop a client adapter process on z/OS UNIX System Services, use the `kill` command or press `Ctrl-C` if it is running in an active rlogin shell.
Running Multiple Client Adapters Simultaneously

Overview

This section describes how to run multiple client adapters simultaneously.

In this section

This section discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load Balancing with Multiple Client Adapters</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Two Client Adapters on the Same z/OS Host</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Load Balancing with Multiple Client Adapters

Overview
The client adapter is a multi-threaded application that can concurrently service multiple requests. However, an installation can choose to run multiple client adapters to spread the workload over address spaces when using APPC. When using cross memory, this scenario does not apply. This subsection discusses the following topics:

- Load balancing scenario
- Graphical overview
- Load balancing scenario explanation

Load balancing scenario
Suppose there are three CICS regions that might run client transactions to be processed via the client adapter. An installation might choose to run two client adapters to process the load. If one of the client adapters is stopped, the other can still service client requests from CICS.

Graphical overview
Figure 9 illustrates the load balancing scenario.

Figure 9: Graphical Overview of a Load Balancing Scenario
Each CICS region contains an Orbix runtime. Each Orbix runtime has a configuration that specifies the same symbolic destination. The symbolic destination determines the client adapter that CICS client transaction requests are being directed to. From the CICS perspective, it appears as if there is only one client adapter running.

APPC/MVS processes the CICS client transaction requests. It queues the requests in an allocation queue. The allocation queue is determined by the symbolic destination. Because all CICS regions are using the same symbolic destination, CICS client transaction requests are directed to a single allocation queue.

Both client adapters are using the same configuration file and same configuration scope. Therefore, they are using the same symbolic destination, and share the same allocation queue that APPC/MVS uses for CICS client transaction requests. Each client adapter has one or more threads that are waiting for allocation requests from APPC/MVS, all from the same allocation queue.

APPC/MVS hands off an allocation request to a thread in one of the client adapters. Determining which thread to give an allocation request to is an internal function of APPC/MVS. Therefore, it is APPC/MVS that spreads the load over the two client adapters. If one of the client adapters is stopped, APPC/MVS hands off all allocation requests to the client adapter that is still running.
Running Two Client Adapters on the Same z/OS Host

Overview
An installation might choose to run a test and production client adapter on the same z/OS host. In this scenario, when using APPC, it is not desirable for the client adapters to share the APPC/MVS allocate queues.

This subsection discusses the following topics:
- Running a test and production client adapter on the same host
- Graphical overview
- Setting up a test and production client adapter on the same host

Running a test and production client adapter on the same host
Each CICS region contains an Orbix runtime. Each Orbix runtime has a configuration that specifies different symbolic destinations. The production CICS region is configured to communicate with the production client adapter. The test CICS region is configured to communicate with the test client adapter.

Using APPC
When using APPC, APPC/MVS processes the CICS client transaction requests. It queues the requests to separate allocation queues—one for the production client adapter using the production symbolic destination, and one for the test client adapter using the test symbolic destination.

Both client adapters are using the same configuration file but different configuration scopes. The configuration scopes can define different symbolic destinations. Therefore, the client adapters each have their own allocation queues.

Using cross memory
When using cross memory, the data from the CICS client transaction is sent directly to the client adapter address space. The data from the production CICS is sent directly to the production client adapter, and the data from the test CICS is sent directly to the test client adapter.

Both client adapters are using the same configuration file but different configuration scopes. The configuration scopes can define different symbolic destinations. Therefore, the client adapters each have their own name/token pairs.
Running Multiple Client Adapters Simultaneously

Graphical overview

Figure 10 illustrates how two client adapters can run on the same z/OS host when using APPC.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>When using APPC, define separate symbolic destinations in APPC/MVS for the test and production client adapters to use. Refer to “Defining an APPC Destination Name for the Client Adapter” on page 166 for more information on defining symbolic destinations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Configure the Orbix runtime inside CICS for the test and production regions. The test region is configured with the test symbolic destination. The production region is configured with the production symbolic destination. Refer to “Customizing Orbix Symbolic Destination” on page 206 for more information on configuring the symbolic destination.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
CHAPTER 21 | Using the Client Adapter

3 Define a test configuration scope in the client adapter configuration file such as `iona_services.cics_test_client`. The existing `iona_services.cics_client` configuration scope can be used for production. Set the test symbolic destination in the test configuration scope, and set the production symbolic destination in the production configuration scope.

When using APPC, refer to “APPC destination” on page 180 for more information on configuring the symbolic destination.

When using cross memory, refer to “Cross memory communication destination” on page 191 for more information on configuring the symbolic destination.

4 Start the production client adapter, specifying a configuration scope of `iona_services.cics_client`. Start the test client adapter specifying the test configuration scope defined in step 3 (that is, `iona_services.cics_test_client`). Refer to “Starting the Client Adapter” on page 330 for more information on running the client adapter with a different configuration scope.
In this part

This part contains the following chapters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary of Acronyms</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Troubleshooting

This chapter provides an overview of the MCLOOKUP utility that can be used for troubleshooting.

In this chapter

This chapter discusses the following topics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the MCLOOKUP utility on native z/OS</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the MCLOOKUP utility on z/OS UNIX System Services</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Overview

The **MCLOOKUP** utility is supplied with your Orbix Mainframe installation and can be used to perform lookups on system exception minor codes. It serves as a troubleshooting tool in cases where an errant CORBA application reports a minor code but does not display a useful message.

Starting the MCLOOKUP utility on native z/OS

In a native z/OS environment, you can start the **MCLOOKUP** utility using the following sample JCL:

```plaintext
//MCLOOKUP JOB (),
//         CLASS=A,
//         MSGCLASS=X,
//         MSGLEVEL=(1,1),
//         NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//         REGION=0M,
//         TIME=1440
//*
//   JCLLIB ORDER=(HLQ.ORBIX63.PROCLIB)
//   INCLUDE MEMBER=(ORXVARS)
//*
//* Run the Minor Code Lookup utility
//*
//* Please customise the search criteria via the PPARAM variable
//* before running this utility
//*
//* Usage:
//*   MCLOOKUP .query options.
//*
//* Query options (include a subset of the following):
//*   -mcv/-minor_code_value .val. Specify minor code value
//*      as search criteria
//*   -exn/-exception_name .val. Specify exception name
//*      as search criteria
//*   -sbn/-subsystem_name .val. Specify subsystem name
//*      as search criteria
//*   -mcn/-minor_code_name .val. Specify minor code name
//*      as search criteria
//*
//* Examples:
//*   MCLOOKUP -mcv 0x49540102
//*   MCLOOKUP -mcv 1230242050 -exn TRANSIENT
```

**Note:** In the following example, a minor code value of **0x49540102** is passed across to **MCLOOKUP** for investigation.
### Starting the MCLOOKUP utility on z/OS UNIX System Services

On z/OS UNIX System Services, use the following command to run the MCLOOKUP utility:

```
mclookup -mcv minor_code
```

For example:

```
mclookup -mcv 0x49540102
```
CHAPTER A | Troubleshooting
Glossary of Acronyms

This glossary provides an expansion for each of the acronyms used in this guide.

For more details of each of these terms, refer to the following, as appropriate:


Table 11: Glossary of Acronym Extensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Extension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACB</td>
<td>Access Control Block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEE</td>
<td>Accessor Environment Entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APAR</td>
<td>Application Program Authorized Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPC</td>
<td>Advanced Program to Program Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCII</td>
<td>American National Standard Code for Information Interchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CICS</td>
<td>Customer Information Control System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORBA</td>
<td>Common Object Request Broker Architecture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 11: Glossary of Acronym Extensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Extension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSD</td>
<td>CICS System Definition Data Set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DASD</td>
<td>Direct Access Storage Device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLL</td>
<td>Dynamic Link Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBCDIC</td>
<td>Extended Binary-Coded Decimal Interchange Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJB</td>
<td>Enterprise Java Beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIOP</td>
<td>General Inter-ORB Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HFS</td>
<td>Hierarchal File System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDL</td>
<td>Interface Definition Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFR</td>
<td>Interface Repository</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIOP</td>
<td>Internet Inter-ORB Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOR</td>
<td>Interoperable Object Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPL</td>
<td>Initial Program Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRC</td>
<td>Inter Region Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JCL</td>
<td>Job Control Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE</td>
<td>Language Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LU</td>
<td>Logical Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVS</td>
<td>Multiple Virtual Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMG</td>
<td>Object Management Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMVS</td>
<td>Open Multiple Virtual Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORB</td>
<td>Object Request Broker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTS</td>
<td>Object Transaction Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PADS</td>
<td>Program Access to Data Sets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCB</td>
<td>Program Control Block</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11: Glossary of Acronym Extensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Extension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PDS</td>
<td>Partitioned Data Set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSB</td>
<td>Program Specification Block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACF</td>
<td>Resource Access Control Facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRS</td>
<td>Resource Recovery Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAF</td>
<td>System Authorization Facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNA</td>
<td>System Network Architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPA</td>
<td>Save Program Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/IP</td>
<td>Transmission Control Protocol over Internet Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP</td>
<td>Transaction Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPN</td>
<td>Transaction Program Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSL</td>
<td>Transport Security Layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO</td>
<td>Time Sharing Option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UACC</td>
<td>Universal Access Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USS</td>
<td>UNIX System Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTAM</td>
<td>Virtual Telecommunications Access Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XCF</td>
<td>Cross Coupling Facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WFI</td>
<td>Wait For Input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WTO</td>
<td>Write-To-Operator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

A
ACBNAME= parameter 103, 171
address space, non swappable 187
address space ID 189
amtp_appc 151
amtp_appc plug-in configuration items 152
AMTP function timeout 180
AMTP_XMEM 183
amtp_xmem 151
APF authorization 122
APF-authorized 185
APPC 148
APPC/MVS side information dataset, specifying 164
APPC data segment length 111
APPC destination 180
APPC destination name 100, 110, 166
multiple 168
APPCLU class profiles 103
format 234
APPCLU profile name 107
and LU name 99
APPCLU profiles 177
APPCLU profiles, user IDs 107
APPCLU RACF definitions 106
APPCLU RACF profiles, defining 325
APPC maximum communication threads 181
APPC minimum communication threads 180
APP MPG profile
CICS local LU 327
APPC resources to CICS 175
APPC-side information data set example 100
APPL class, Client Adapter LU 326
APPLID 94
ASCII-to-EBCDIC translation 48
ASID 189
ATBSDFMU utility program 100
ATTACHSEC(IDENTIFY) 93
ATTACHSEC operand, specifying 109

B
BINDSECURITY 324
bind time security 106
CONNECTION resource 235

BPX.SERVER 129
and Adapter user ID 132
BPX.SRV.* resource 132
BPX.SRV.userid resource 132
ByteSegments attribute 49

C
C++ demonstration for cicsraw 51
C++ standard classes support 136
CEDA transaction 92
CharSegments attribute 48
CICS
configuring inside 200
customizing 136
defining APPC resources to 104
cicsa plug-in configuration items 66, 125
cics_appc plug-in configuration items 73
CICS APPLID 94
CICS commit processing 65
CICS connection name 94
CICS Connection Type 94
CICS connection type 94
cics_eci plug-in configuration items 72
CICS local LU 163
access to 179, 327
CICS mirror transaction ID, default 95
CICS pseudo-region 224
cicsraw IDL interface 44, 45
ByteSegments attribute 49
C++ demo client 51
CharSegments attribute 48
CICS mirror transaction ID 95
din parameter 48
modifications to 44
runcmd_binary operation 48
runcmd_binary_with_tran operation 49
runcmd operation 48
runcmd_with_tran operation 49
tran_name parameter 48
CICS resource definitions
installing 137
CICS resources, access permissions 93
cics_rrs plug-in configuration items 73
INDEX

CICS security mechanisms
  for APPC 231
  for EXCI 223
CICS system initialization parameters 225
CICS transaction-attach security 225
Client Adapter
  APPC security 323
  change configuration scope 331
  characteristics 53
  configuration scope 149
  functions 54
  graphical overview 54
  load balancing 334
  LU-LU security 177
  multiple on same host 336
  plug-ins 151
  starting 330
  stopping 332
client_adapter 185
Client Adapter LU 164
  access to 179, 326
client principal support configuration items 125
client Principal value 221
  z/OS user IDs 221
clients 25, 27
  authentication 221
  invoking on CORBA objects 29
client stub code 28
COMMAREA block size 95
COMMAREA length, maximum 49
common_adapter 151
Configuration domains 36
configuration file 265
CONNECTION resource
  ATTACHSEC operand 109
  bind security 235, 324
  BINDSECURITY option 106
conversation security 326
CONVSEC setting 107
CORBA 23
  application basics 28
  introduction to 22
CORBA::Principal 125
  SAF plug-in 221
CORBA gateway to the CICS system 28
CORBA objects 25
  and IDL 26
  client invocations on 29
  coupling facility log streams 116
cross memory communication 148, 183
CSD group DFH$EXCI 91
CSECT 138, 202
D
DASD-only log streams 116
data types defined in cicsraw 47
default security mode for APPC 236
default security mode for EXCI 227
DESTNAME 101, 167
DFH$EXCI 91
DFHCSD DD cards 104
DFHCSDUP, running 92, 137
din parameter 48
do_trans() operation 44
E
EBCDIC, translating from ASCII 48
EPERM errors 132
errors, EPERM 132
event_log
  filters
    Client Adapter 158
  event_log filters 81
  event logging 81, 138, 202
    Client Adapter 158
  event logging settings 202
exception information
  for APPC 50
  for EXCI 51
exceptions
  address space 132
defined in cicsraw 48
EXCI
  default security mode 227
  user security 225
EXCI GENERIC connection
  type 94
  update access 224
EXCI limitation on request size 95
EXCI mirror transaction
  Adapter default mode 93
  ID 95
  user security enables 93
G
GIOP, client_principal support 125
global configuration scope 47
H
host name 78

I
IDL compiler 28
   -mfa plug-in 142
   operation parameters 29
IDL interfaces 26
   for CICS Adapter 44
   location for Adapter 43
IDL operations 29
   adapter processing of 43
   COMMAREA block length 95
   parameter-passing modes 29
IEFSSNxx member 121
IFR 36, 245
   modifications to and Server Adapter 250, 259
   registering IDL interfaces 247
   running in prepare mode 263
IFR signature cache file 252
   configuration 85, 194
   runtime modifications 253
   updating 253
IIOP 23
   cicsa plug-in configuration 66
   client_principal configuration 127
   mapping gateway interface 272
   TCP-IP port number 79
   timestamps 84
initial references:IT_cicsraw:plugin 65, 80, 81
initial references:IT_RRS:plugin 122
Interface Definition Language  See IDL
Interface Repository  See IFR
iona_services.cicsa configuration scope example 60
iona_services.cics_client 148
iona_services.cics_client.cross_memory 148
iordump utility 270
IORs 36
   and itmfaloc 276
   IT_MFA 265
   IT_MFA_CICSRaw 265
   locating Server Adapter 275
   mapping gateway interface 272
   POA prefix 83
   sample 266
   transactional processing support 114
IRC, enabling 91
IRC parameter 91
IsDefault 143
itadmin commands 271
itadmin mfa refresh command 251
itcicsa shell script 132
IT_MFA_CICS module 44
IT_MFA event logging subsystem 81
itmfaloc 275
   format 276
   using 277
IT_MFU event logging subsystem 158
IXCL1DSU 116
IXCMIAPU utility 120

L
Language Environment Support 136
link security 109, 225
Location domains 35
locator 36
   running Adapter in prepare mode 263
LOGR couple data set 118, 119
log streams
   defining 120
   IBM recommended sizes 117
   running 117
   types 116
LU=LOCAL conversations
security settings for 103
LU 6.2
   and Adapter usage 232
   connection to a remote system 106
   conversation security levels 231
LU-LU security verification 177
LU-LU session-level verification 103
LU names
   APPC destination 110
   outbound LU 110
   restricting use of 235
   specifying 99
   user access 108
LUs
   access to 326
   CICS local 163
   Client Adapter 164
   defined to VTAM 170
   outbound 231
   protecting 179
   VTAM requirements for 102
LU security 323
INDEX

M
mapping file 43
  errors 252
  format 239
  generating 241
  IDL attribute support 240
  runtime modifications to 243
Mapping Gateway interface 272
maxCommareaSize attribute 49
MCLOOKUP utility 341
MFACLINK JCL member 139
MFAMappingExtension 143
MFAMappings 142
MFAMappingSuffix 144
mfa plug-in
  options 273
  using 272
MODENAME 167
MODENAME parameter 101
MRO connect security 224
MRO logon security 224

N
naming clash 47
NETNAME of a CICS-specific EXCI connection 94
networked environment, controlling access 233
node daemon 35
  running Adapter in prepare mode 263
non-swappable address space 187
numeric data corruption 48

O
object ID 33
object key 83
object references 26, 32
  and the POA 33
  map to servants 33
ORB (Object Request Broker)
  and the naming service 33
  locating objects 36
ORB_init() 82
Orbix 23
Orbix application 32
Orbix CICS resource definitions, installing 92
Orbix configuration inside CICS 200
Orbix event logging 81
Orbix runtime in CICS 138, 202
  parameter-passing modes 29

Orbix security mechanisms 221
ORB-level plug-ins 82
ORBName 60, 148
  multiple adapters 271
orb_plugins 82
  Client Adapter 160
ORX1 session 92
ORXLU02 profile 108
ORXMFACx DLL 139, 203
  segment size 204
OTS plug-in 83
outbound LU 231

P
parameter-passing mode qualifiers 29
PARTNER LU 101, 167
partner LU 103
passwords
  and session keys 103
  partner LU 103
  processing requests without 129
persistence mode policy 78
plugins:amtp_appc:function_wait 180
plugins:amtp_appc:max_comm_threads 181
plugins:amtp_appc:maximum_sync1_level 181
plugins:amtp_appc:min_comm_threads 180
plugins:amtp_appc:symbolic_destination 180
plugins:amtp_xmem:max_comm_threads 191
plugins:amtp_xmem:max_segment_size 192
plugins:amtp_xmem:min_comm_threads 191
plugins:amtp_xmem:symbolic_destination 191
plugins:cicsa:alternate_endpoint 79
plugins:cicsa:direct_persistence 78
plugins:cicsa:display_timings 83
plugins:cicsa:display_timings_in_logfile 83
plugins:cicsa:ifr:cache 85
plugins:cicsa:iiop:host 78
plugins:cicsa:iiop:port 79
plugins:cicsa:mapping_file 84
plugins:cicsa:poa_prefix 83
plugins:cicsa:repository_id 85
plugins:cicsa:type_info:source 86
plugins:cicsa:use_client_password 127
plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal 126
  security 227, 236
plugins:cicsa:use_client_principal_user_security 12
  6
plugins:cicsa_appc:appc_outbound_lu_name 99, 103, 110
plugins:cics_appc:cics_destination_name 101, 110
plugins:cics_appc:segment_length 111
plugins:cics_appc:timeout 110
plugins:cics_exci:applid 94
plugins:cics_exci:check_if_cics_available 95
plugins:cics_exci:max_comm_area_length 95
plugins:cics_exci:pipe_name 94, 224
plugins:cics_exci:pipe_type 94
plugins:client_adapter:ifr:cache 194
plugins:client_adapter:repository_id 194
plugins:client_adapter:type_info:source 195
plugins:rrs:rmname 122
POA (Portable Object Adapter) 33
POA prefix used by adapter 83
policies:giop:interop_policy
  enable_principal_service_context 127
  principal_service_context_id 128
policies:iiop:client_version_policy 127
policies:iiop:server_version_policy 127
pragma prefix 47
PREPCICA member 263
PresetOptions 143
principal values, mapping to z/OS user IDs 221
PROCLIB. 190
proxy objects 29
pthread_security_np() 131

R
RACF 231
RACF APPCPORT profiles, creating 108
RACF FACILITY class profile
  READ access 224
  update access 224
RACF GCICSTRN resource class 225
RACF SURROGAT class 132
RACF TCICSTRN resource class 225
RACF user profile 129
RECEIVECOUNT 92
refreshInterface() 260
refreshOperation() 260
resource manager names 122
RESSEC= parameter 225, 227
RRS
  setting up 115
  starting and stopping 121
run_program 48
run_program_binary 48
run_program_binary_with_tran 49
run_program_with_tran 49

S
S390 Assembler Program Variables 201
SAF Plug-In 221
sample applications 28
SEC= parameter 106
SECACPT=CONV key 233
SECACPT= parameter 171
SECPRFX=YES 93
security
  APPC-based considerations 229
  common considerations 220
  default mode 227
  default mode APPC 236
  EXCI-based considerations 222
  link 109, 225
  MRO connect 224
  MRO logon 224
  use_client_principal mode 227
  user 109, 225
security modes
  default for APPC 236
  default for EXCI 227
security_none 231, 233
security_pgm 232
security_same 232, 233, 234
segment size, customizing 204
Server Adapter
  access to 232
  and logged on users 233
  APPC based 231
  APPC security modes 236
  default mode EXCI requirements 93
  first run 252
  functions 40
  graphical overview 42
  locating 275
  obtaining type information 43
  old versions of 44
  ORBName 60
  plug-ins 65
  programmed controlled 132
  running in default mode 93
  running multiple 270
  security for users already logged on 233
  security modes 226
  starting 267
  stopping 269
using type_info store 255
servers 25, 27
session key
  bind requests 106
session key, APPCLU profile name 107
session keys 103
session-level verification 234, 235
session security, specifying 106
SET PROG 186
SETPROG 185
SETRRS CANCEL command 121
SETPSI ADD, SUBNAME=RRS command 121
SETXCF operator commands 119
skeleton code 28
SNA network
  access to 103
  and LUs 102
SPECIFIC connection type 94
S RRS command 121
STEPLIB 104, 185
  updating CICS region 137
SURROGAT RACF class 129
SYS1.MIGLIB 120
SYS1.PARMLIB 187
SYS1.SAMPLIB(ATBAPPL) definition 102, 170
SYSEVENT TRANSWAP 187
System Logger and RRS 117

T
thread IDs 84
thread-level security environments 129
thread_pool
  high_water_mark 74
  and RECEIVECOUNT 92
  initial_threads 74
thread_pool:high_water_mark 79
thread_pool:initial_threads 79
timestamps 83
TPNAME 101, 167
tran_name parameter 48
transaction processing times 83
troubleshooting 341
TypeinfoFileExtension 143
TypeinfoFileSuffix 144
type information mechanism 85
type_info store
  configuration 86, 195
  generating files 257
  introduction 255

U
user ID
  and access to BPX.SERVER 132
  and ATTACHSEC=LOCAL 109
BPX.SERVER 129
for APPCLU profiles 107
UPDATE access 224
user security 109, 225
  enabled on EXCL 93

V
VERIFY= parameter 103, 172
VSAM data set name, specifying 99
VTAM SECACPT= setting 107

W
WTO announce plug-in 82, 160

X
XAPPC= parameter 106
XPPT= parameter 225

Z
z/OS user ID 221